

Thank you very much for choosing this vehicle.

In order to correctly operate and maintain your vehicle, please take the time to read this manual carefully.

After reading, please leave the manual in the vehicle for future reference. Please leave this manual in the vehicle at the same time of resale, as the new owner will also need to read the information in it.

All the information and specifications in this manual are current at the time of printing.

Remember that authorized service station knows your vehicle best and has factory-trained technicians and OEM parts to guarantee your safety. Do not use non-OEM parts or accessories to modify your vehicle. Modifying will affect the functionality, safety and durability of your vehicle.

According to the specification of equipment and features of your vehicle, some descriptions and illustrations may differ from that on your vehicle.

Any data, descriptions and illustrations provided in this manual cannot be used as the basis for any insurance claim.

We reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications at any time without notice.

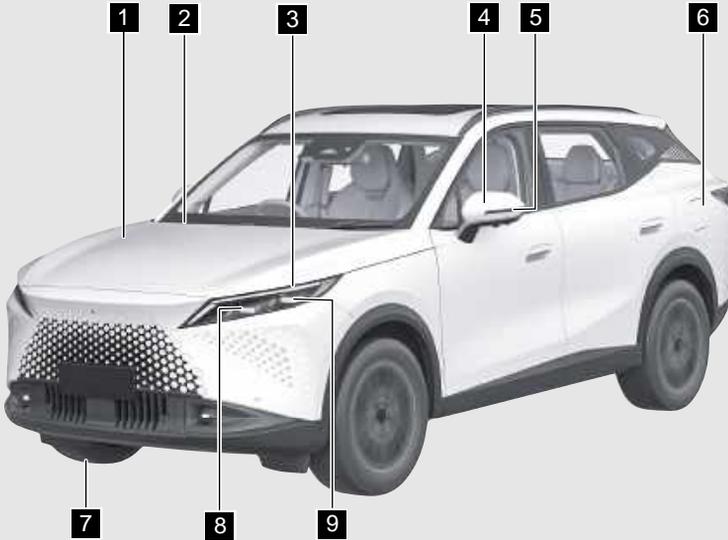
All rights reserved. This document should not be reproduced or copied, in whole or in part, without the written permission.

Happy driving!

Version No.: T1GCPHEVRHDOM26ENUK01

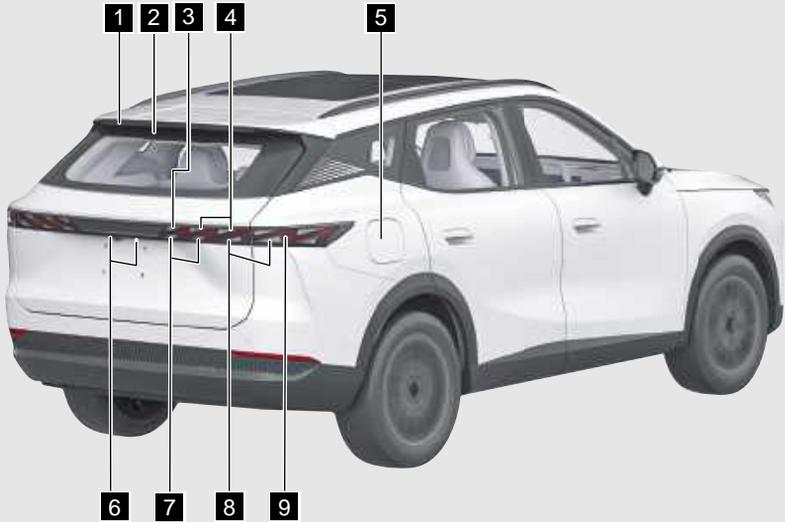
Issued February 2026

Pictorial Index



1	Front Compartment Cover	P.126
2	Front Wiper Blade	P.44
3	Position Light.....	P.45
	Turn Signal Light.....	P.47
	Daytime Running Light.....	P.47
4	Outside Rear View Mirror	P.39
5	Side Turn Signal Light.....	P.47
6	Fuel Tank Cap	P.131
7	Tire	P.258
8	High Beam Light	P.46
9	Low Beam Light.....	P.45

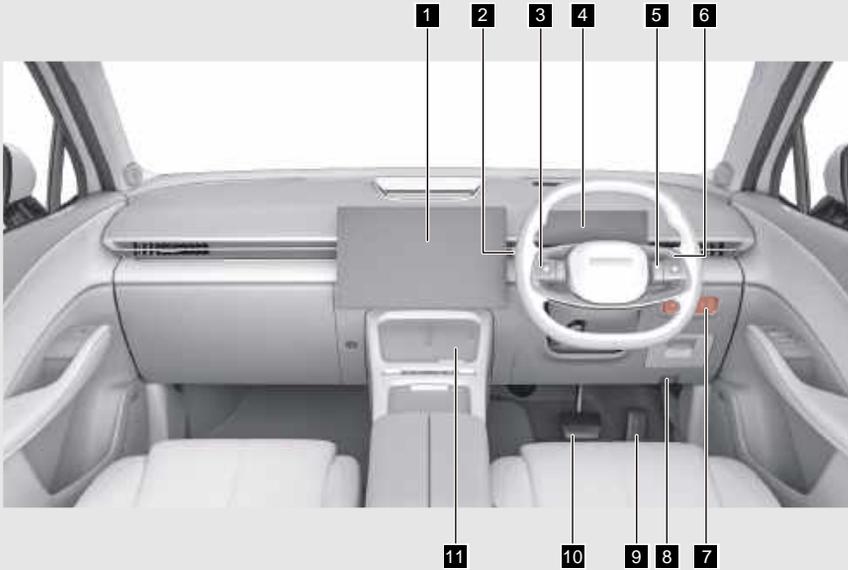
Note: For all equipment, please refer to the actual vehicle.



1	High Mounted Brake Light	P.47
2	Rear Wiper Blade	P.45
3	Rear Fog Light	P.45
4	Turn Signal Light	P.47
5	Charging Port Cover	P.219
6	License Plate Light	P.45
7	Back-up Light	P.47
8	Brake Light	P.47
9	Position Light	P.45

Note: For all equipment, please refer to the actual vehicle.

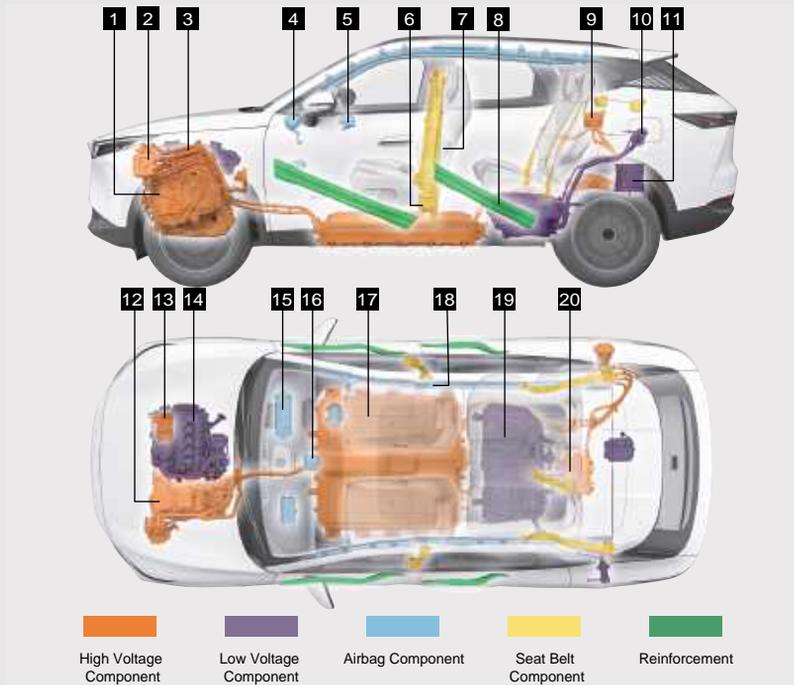
Pictorial Index



1 Audio System	P.93
2 Wiper Switch	P.42
3 Cruise Button	P.160
4 Instrument Cluster.....	P.26
5 Audio Button	P.100
6 Column Shift Switch	P.146
7 Headlight Switch.....	P.45
8 Front Compartment Cover Release Lever.....	P.126
9 Accelerator Pedal	
10 Brake Pedal	
11 Wireless Charging Area	P.115

Note: The interiors are different depending to the market requirement. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

Pictorial Index



- | | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1 Hybrid Transmission | 2 High Voltage Heater | 3 High Voltage Power Distribution Unit |
| 4 Front Passenger Airbag | 5 Driver Airbag | 6 Seat Belt Pretensioner (If Equipped) |
| 7 Side Airbag (If Equipped) | 8 Anti-collision Panel | 9 AC/DC Charging Port |
| 10 Fuel Filler | 11 Battery (12 V) | 12 Front Motor Controller |
| 13 Electric Compressor | 14 Engine | 15 Driver Knee Airbag (If Equipped) |
| 16 Airbag Module | 17 Power Battery | 18 Side Curtain (If Equipped) |
| 19 High Pressure Fuel Tank | 20 On-board Charger Assembly | |

Note: For all equipment, please refer to the actual vehicle.

Table of Contents

1. INTRODUCTION

1-1. How to Read This Manual	
How to Read This Manual.....	2
Table of Contents	2
Pictorial Index	2
Index	2
1-2. Symbols in Manual	
Symbols in Manual	3
1-3. New Vehicle Inspection	
User Registration	
Certificate.....	4
Delivery Card.....	5
1-4. "Person-to-Person"	
Consultative Service Card	
"Person-to-Person"	
Consultative Service	
Card	7
1-5. New Vehicle	
Inspection	
New Vehicle Inspection	11
Delivery Inspection	
Certificate.....	11
1-6. New Vehicle Break-in	
New Vehicle Break-in	12
1-7. How to Save Fuel and	
Extend Life of Vehicle	
How to Save Fuel and	
Extend Life of Vehicle.....	13
1-8. Precautions Before	
Driving Vehicle	
Safety Check	14
Before Starting Engine	14
After Starting Engine.....	15
When Driving	15
Parking Operations.....	15
Parking on Slope	15
Exhaust System	
Inspection	17

1-9. Off-road Driving Precautions	
Off-road Driving.....	18
1-10. Precautions When Driving in	
Rainy Condition	
When Driving on	
Slippery Road Surfaces.....	19
Driving Through Water	19
1-11. Winter Driving Precautions	
Winter Driving Tips	20
Driving on Road	
Covered with Ice and	
Snow	21
Tyre Chains	21
1-12. Cybersecurity Notice	
Cybersecurity Support	
Service Update or	
Termination Notice.....	22
Cybersecurity Notice for	
Scrapping or Resale	23

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

2-1. Instrument Cluster	
Instrument Cluster	
Overview.....	26
Operation/Malfunction	
Indicator.....	27
2-2. Steering Wheel	
Horn	35
Heated Steering Wheel	35
Adjusting Steering	
Wheel.....	36
Steering Wheel Buttons.....	37
2-3. Rear View Mirror	
Inside Rear View Mirror	38
Outside Rear View	
Mirror.....	39
Outside Rear View	
Mirror Memory Function	41

Table of Contents

Rear View Mirror Automatic Adjustment When Reversing (If Equipped)	41	Installing Child Restraint Systems.....	65
2-4. Wiper System		Reminder for Children Staying in Rear Seat	68
Wiper Operation.....	42	3. INTERIOR FUNCTION	
Replacing Wiper Blade.....	44	3-1. Key Information	
2-5. Lighting System		Smart Key	73
Exterior Lighting	45	Effective Range.....	75
Interior Lighting	47	Keyless Entry.....	77
Headlight Leveling Adjusting.....	48	Vehicle Arming.....	79
Follow Me Home Function.....	48	Immobilizer System	80
Smart Vehicle Locating Function.....	49	Smart Key Vehicle Locating.....	81
Intelligent Headlight Control (IHC).....	49	Remote Starting for Smart Key	81
Fogging Instructions for Light.....	50	3-2. Doors	
2-6. Seat		Door Unlocking/Locking	82
Correct Sitting Posture	51	Door Mechanical Switch	83
Head Restraint.....	51	Child Lock	84
Front Seat	52	3-3. Windows	
Second Row Seat.....	53	Power Windows	85
Seat Heating Function.....	54	Window Remote Control Function.....	87
Seat Ventilation Function (If Equipped).....	54	Window Jam Protection Function (If Equipped).....	87
Driver Seat Memory Function.....	54	3-4. Panoramic Moon Roof	
Easy Seat Access/Exit Function (If Equipped).....	55	Panoramic Moon Roof (If Equipped).....	89
2-7. Seat Belt		Moon Roof Remote Control Function.....	90
Seat Belt.....	55	Moon Roof Jam Protection Function.....	91
Seat Belt Pretensioner	60	3-5. Audio System	
2-8. Child Restraint System		Audio View	93
Child Restraint System.....	61	Control Center	94
Recommended Child Restraint Systems	63	Setting	94
Top Tether	64	Sliding Screen (If Equipped)	98
		Audio Button.....	100

Table of Contents

Voice Recognition Function.....	100	Rear USB.....	124
Phone-link.....	100	3-13.Backup Power Supply (12 V)	
3-6. Air Conditioning System		Front Backup Power Supply	125
Front A/C	103	Rear Backup Power Supply (If equipped).....	125
A/C Setting.....	104	3-14.Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors	
Air Conditioning Operation.....	104	Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors	125
Air Conditioning Heating.....	107	3-15.Front Compartment Cover	
A/C Cooling.....	108	Opening/Closing Front Compartment Cover	126
Intelligent Mode (If Equipped)	110	3-16.Back Door	
Refrigeration/Warming Function of Armrest Box	110	Manual Back Door (If Equipped)	126
Air Outlets Airflow Control.....	111	Power Back Door (If Equipped)	127
3-7. Fragrance System		Back Door Emergency Opening.....	131
Fragrance System (If Equipped)	111	3-17.Fuel Tank Cap	
Replacing fragrance.....	111	Electric Fuel Tank Cap	131
3-8. Driving Recorder			
Driving Recorder (If Equipped)	112		
Setting.....	115		
3-9. Wireless Charging			
Wireless Charging (CWC) (If Equipped)	115		
3-10.Remote Control System			
Remote Control System (If Equipped).....	119		
Introduction of Product Functions	119		
3-11.Storage Space			
Storage Space	121		
3-12.USB Port			
Front USB	124		

4. DRIVING VEHICLE

4-1. Vehicle Power Mode	
Inspection and Preparation Before Driving	136
Vehicle Power-on	136
Vehicle Power-off	137
Engine Self-maintenance.....	138
4-2. Steering System	
Electric Power Steering System (EPS).....	139

Table of Contents

- 4-3. Brake System
 - Electric Parking Brake System (EPB) 140
 - Auto Hold System (- AUTO HOLD) 142
 - Vacuum Booster (If Equipped) 143
 - Foot Brake 144
- 4-4. Transmission
 - Automatic Transmission 145
 - Column Shift Switch..... 146
 - Drive Mode..... 147
- 4-5. Airbag
 - Airbag..... 149
- 4-6. Event Data Recorder (EDR)
 - Event Data Recorder (EDR)..... 155

5. DRIVING ASSIST

- 5-1. Driving Assist
 - Caution..... 159
- 5-2. Speed Limit Assist System (SLA)
 - Speed Limit Assist System (SLA) (If Equipped) 160
- 5-3. Speed Limit System
 - Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) System..... 160
 - Active Speed Limit (ASL) (If Equipped)..... 165
 - Intelligent Speed Control System (SCF) (If Equipped)..... 166
- 5-4. Lane Assist System
 - Lane Assist System (If Equipped) 167

- Lane Departure Warning (LDW) (If Equipped)..... 167
- Lane Departure Prevention (LDP) (If Equipped) 168
- Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) (If Equipped) 170
- 5-5. Blind Spot Detection Assist System
 - Blind Spot Detection Assist System (If Equipped) 171
 - Door Opening Warning (DOW) System (If Equipped) 173
 - Rear Collision Warning (RCW) System (If Equipped) 174
 - Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) System (If Equipped) 174
 - Rear Cross Traffic Brake (RCTB) System (If Equipped)..... 174
- 5-6. Intelligent Cruise Control System
 - Traffic Jam Assist (TJA) System/Integrated Cruise Assist (ICA) System (If Equipped) 175
- 5-7. Driving Safety Assist System
 - Secondary Collision Mitigation System (MCB) (If Equipped)..... 178
 - Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)..... 178
 - Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) System/ Front Collision Warning

Table of Contents

(FCW) System (If Equipped)	180	External Discharging Function (If Equipped).....	226
5-8. Driver Monitoring System (DMS)		Low-speed Pedestrian Warning Sound	229
Driver Monitoring System (DMS) (If Equipped)	183	5-12. Data Privacy	
5-9. Parking Assist System		Driver Drowsiness and Attention Warning (DDAW)	229
Panoramic View Monitor System (AVM).....	184	Advanced Driver Assistance System (ADAS)	229
Parking Radar System	188	Emergency call (eCall)	230
Parking assist system (If Equipped)	190	6. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY	
Traceback Reversing System (RA) (If Equipped)	194	6-1. Basic Knowledge of Vehicle Emergency	
Remote Parking Assist (If Equipped).....	197	Vehicle Emergency	
5-10. Braking Force Control System		Rescue	232
Electronic Stability Control System	201	Hazard Light.....	232
Hill Descent Control (HDC) System	203	Reflective Vest.....	233
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	204	Warning Triangle.....	233
Extended Function	205	Spare Tools	234
5-11. Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle System (PHEV)		6-2. Vehicle Emergency Handling	
Power Battery	206	If You Have a Flat Tyre	
New Energy.....	209	When Driving.....	234
Energy Recovery		Repairing Tyre in	
Intensity	210	Emergency.....	234
Operating Mode	211	Engine Coolant	
Charging Device	214	Temperature is Too	
Charging Operation	218	High	237
AC charging socket		Battery is Depleted	239
electronic lock.....	222	6-3. Towing	
Releasing Charging		Towing Hook (If	
Gun Manually (Only for		Equipped)	241
AC Charging).....	224	Towing Vehicle	242
Charging Precautions	224	Installing Towing Eyelet ...	243
		6-4. Fuse	
		Fuse Box	244
		Checking Fuse.....	245
		Replacing Fuse.....	245

Table of Contents

7. MAINTENANCE

7-1. Repair and Maintenance

Repair and Maintenance.....	248
Authorized Service Station is at Your Service	248
Reading Vehicle Identification Code Information	249
Safety Check	249

7-2. Normal Maintenance

Normal Maintenance.....	250
Power Battery	251
Checking Oil Level.....	255
Checking Transmission Fluid Level.....	256
Checking Brake Fluid Level	256
Checking Coolant Level	257
Checking Radiator and Condenser	257
Checking Tires.....	258
Avoiding Tire Flat Spot	260
Tyre Rotation	261
Checking Battery.....	261
Checking Air Conditioning Filter	261
Checking Windshield Washer Fluid	261
Checking Wiper Blades ...	262
Service and maintenance for general paint.....	263

7-3. Regular Maintenance

Technical Data	265
----------------------	-----

8. SPECIFICATION

8-1. Label Location

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)	268
Vehicle Product Label	269
Engine Number	269
Microwave Window.....	269

8-2. Vehicle Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions	270
Vehicle Type	271
Vehicle Weight	271
Vehicle Performance.....	272
Engine Performance	272
Drive Motor	273
Fuel System	273
Suspension System.....	274
Power Battery	274
Battery.....	274
Brake System	275
Wheel Alignment.....	275
Wheel and Tyre.....	276
Seat Parameters	276
Light Bulb Specification ...	277
Measurement Range of Vehicle Overall Size Excluding Following Components.....	277
Your Rights.....	279
Contact Us	279

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

1-1. How to Read This Manual	Before Starting Engine..... 14
How to Read This Manual2	After Starting Engine..... 15
Table of Contents2	When Driving..... 15
Pictorial Index.....2	Parking Operations..... 15
Index.....2	Parking on Slope..... 15
1-2. Symbols in Manual	Exhaust System
Symbols in Manual3	Inspection 17
1-3. New Vehicle Inspection	1-9. Off-road Driving
User Registration	Precautions
Certificate4	Off-road Driving 18
Delivery Card5	1-10. Precautions When Driving in
1-4. "Person-to-Person"	Rainy Condition
Consultative Service Card	When Driving on Slippery
"Person-to-Person"	Road Surfaces..... 19
Consultative Service Card7	Driving Through Water 19
1-5. New Vehicle Inspection	1-11. Winter Driving Precautions
New Vehicle Inspection 11	Winter Driving Tips 20
Delivery Inspection	Driving on Road Covered
Certificate 11	with Ice and Snow 21
1-6. New Vehicle Break-in	Tyre Chains..... 21
New Vehicle Break-in..... 12	1-12. Cybersecurity Notice
1-7. How to Save Fuel and Extend	Cybersecurity Support
Life of Vehicle	Service Update or
How to Save Fuel and	Termination Notice 22
Extend Life of Vehicle 13	Cybersecurity Notice for
1-8. Precautions Before	Scrapping or Resale 23
Driving Vehicle	
Safety Check..... 14	

1. INTRODUCTION

1-1. How to Read This Manual

How to Read This Manual

There are three methods available for you to find the information you need in this manual. Here is a brief introduction of each method.

Table of Contents

Consult the general Table of Contents to determine which chapter of the Owner's Manual contains the information you need and the Chapter Contents to determine its accurate location.

Pictorial Index

The Pictorial Index is a helpful assistant to find the required information quickly, especially when you are not familiar with the component name.

Index

This is the fastest method for you to find the information you need. The index contains a complete listing of all the important vehicle terminologies. More details about the index.

1-2. Symbols in Manual

Symbols in Manual

The following symbols are used in this manual to draw your attention to the information of particular importance. In order to minimize the risks as much as possible, please read the instructions on these symbols carefully before driving, and make sure to follow them.

 **WARNING**

Indicate a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in damage to your property, personal injury or even death.

 **CAUTION**

Indicate a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in damage to your vehicle and its equipment, reducing the vehicle's life span.

 **ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION**

Indicate that the waste must be handled or disposed according to the local environmental protection regulations, otherwise, the environment will be contaminated.

 **READ**

Indicate that the relevant chapter in this manual must be read before any operation.

WARNING and CAUTION relating to personal safety and vehicle safety in this manual are very important. Make sure everyone in the vehicle follows these instructions carefully. Therefore, not only you can enjoy driving pleasure but also vehicle can be kept in good condition.

1. INTRODUCTION

1-3. New Vehicle Inspection

Prior to your purchase, authorized service station has inspected your vehicle according to the regulations. The dealership will record the delivery date and affix its official seal to the User Registration Certificate. Before you sign the User Registration Certificate, the authorized dealer will provide you with instructions regarding your vehicle's overall performance and some basic knowledge about its features and regular operation according to the Vehicle Delivery Card.

User Registration Certificate

Model Code	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)	
Engine Number or Transmission Number	
Vehicle Registration Number	
Seal of Dealer:	
Signature of Dealer:	
Delivery Date	
User	
Address	
E-mail	
Telephone	
Have provided and explained the following items for me: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• VEHICLE• OWNER'S MANUAL• PRE-DELIVERY INSPECTION	
Signature of User:	
Signature of Dealer:	

Delivery Card

Category	No.	Items	Whether Pass Inspection and Explain Clearly	
			YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
Vehicle Performance	1	Engine	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	2	Engine oil, brake fluid, power steering fluid (if equipped), coolant, windshield washer fluid	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	3	VIN code, engine number and nameplate etc.	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	4	Whole set of vehicle keys	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	5	All lights of vehicle	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	6	Windshield and painted surfaces	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	7	Speedometer, tachometer and instrument cluster LCD display	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	8	Tyres, spare tires, spare tools and Owner's Manual	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	9	Seats, seat belts, A/C switches and outlets, glove box and sun visors	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	10	Windows, rear view mirrors, windshield wipers, windshield washers, battery, reversing radar system, horns, moon roof (if equipped), audio device and antenna	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>

1. INTRODUCTION

Category	No.	Items	Whether Pass Inspection and Explain Clearly	
Basic Knowledge About Operation	1*	Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 91 or higher	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
		Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 92 or higher	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
		Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 95 or higher	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
		E22-E100	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	2	Normal operation during the break-in period	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	3	Operation of all the vehicle lights	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	4	Understanding warning lights and indicator lights	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	5	Correct time/mileage of the maintenance schedule	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	6	Vehicle maintenance in winter/summer	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	7	Thorough understanding of the cooling system and normal usage of the coolant	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	8	Correct operation of air conditioning	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	9	Precautions during starting the vehicle	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	10	Correct operation of audio system	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
11	Correct usage of moon roof (if equipped)	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>	
Signature of Sales Clerk:		Date:		
Signature of User:		Date:		

*: Please use the fuel recommended by authorized dealers.

1-4. "Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Card

"Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Card

Authorized service station will provide a dedicated service consultant when you purchase your vehicle. If you have any questions concerning your vehicle, please consult the consultant.

Sheet One (for User)

Name of User:	Date of Purchase:
Dealer of Sales & Service:	Model:
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN):	
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	
1. Vehicle Delivery and Inspection (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Have introduced the basic operation of the vehicle to the user and performed the delivery inspection.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Have explained the warranty policies to the user.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Have explained the precautions of driving to the user.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Have explained the importance of regular maintenance and the maintenance interval time/mileage to the user.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Have explained the importance of having regular maintenance/vehicle repair performed at authorized service station to the user.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Have delivered the Owner's Manual to the user and reminded him/her to read it.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Have informed the service hotline function and how to use it.
2. "Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Mode Introduction (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
<input type="checkbox"/>	If you have questions and demands, consult a service consultant.
<input type="checkbox"/>	The service consultant is the only person authorized by the dealer to answer the user's questions.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Have assigned a dedicated service consultant to each user for "Person to- Person" service.
<input type="checkbox"/>	If the user is not fully satisfied with the service consultant, the user can select another service consultant.
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	
3. Main Work Introduction on Service Consultant (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	

1. INTRODUCTION

<input type="checkbox"/>	Service reception during service and maintenance.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Regular maintenance reminding.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Answer the service/maintenance consultation.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Service/maintenance reservation acceptance.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Annual inspection reminding/acceptance.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Regular greeting revisit, service activity reminded revisit and important holiday greeting.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Other demands from the user.
4. "Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Relationship Establishment:	
Service consultant business card	
Signature of User/Date:	
Signature of Service Consultant/Date:	

Sheet Two (for Dealer of Sales & Service)

Name of User:	Date of Purchase:
Dealer of Sales & Service:	Model:
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN):	
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	
1. Vehicle Delivery and Inspection (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Have introduced the basic operation of the vehicle to the user and performed the delivery inspection.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Have explained the warranty policies to the user.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Have explained the precautions of driving to the user.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Have explained the importance of regular maintenance and the maintenance interval time/mileage to the user.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Have explained the importance of having regular maintenance/vehicle repair performed at authorized service station to the user.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Have delivered the Owner's Manual to the user and reminded him/her to read it.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Have informed the service hotline function and how to use it.
2. "Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Mode Introduction (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
<input type="checkbox"/>	If you have questions and demands, consult a service consultant.
<input type="checkbox"/>	The service consultant is the only person authorized by the dealer to answer the user's questions.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Have assigned a dedicated service consultant to each user for "Person to Person" service.
<input type="checkbox"/>	If the user is not fully satisfied with the service consultant, the user can select another service consultant.
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	
3. Main Work Introduction on Service Consultant (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Service reception during service and maintenance.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Regular maintenance reminding.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Answer the service/maintenance consultation.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Service/maintenance reservation acceptance.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Annual inspection reminding/acceptance.

1. INTRODUCTION

<input type="checkbox"/>	Regular greeting revisit, service activity reminded revisit and important holiday greeting.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Other demands from the user.
4. "Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Relationship Establishment:	
Service consultant business card	
Signature of User/Date:	
Signature of Service Consultant/Date:	

1-5. New Vehicle Inspection

New Vehicle Inspection

Before delivering the vehicle to you, the Sales & Servicing department of your dealership has inspected it according to regulations. The Sales & Servicing department of Auto should fill the delivery date in the inspection certificate and affix the official seal of dealer unit.

Dealer unit will verify the vehicle to you in accordance with "Vehicle Delivery Card", and introduce the knowledge of using the vehicle, which will be signed by salesman and user.

Delivery Inspection Certificate

In witness whereof, this vehicle has passed delivery inspection as regulated, and quality meets technical specification.

Vehicle Model	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)	
Engine Number or Transmission Number	
Vehicle Registration Number	
Official Seal of Dealer of Sales & Service:	
Signature of Dealer of Sales & Service:	
Delivery Date	
User	
Address	
E-mail	
Telephone	
Have provided and explained the following items for me:	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • VEHICLE • OWNER'S MANUAL • PRE-DELIVERY INSPECTION 	
Signature of User:	
Signature of Dealer of Sales & Service:	

1. INTRODUCTION

1-6. New Vehicle Break-in

New Vehicle Break-in

Since the frictional resistance between the moving parts of new vehicle is much larger in the initial use than normal conditions. The break-in effect of initial use will have a great impact on the vehicle's life, operation reliability and economy, so the use of new vehicle must strictly enforce the regulations. The break-in period is 1,864 miles (3,000 km) in general.

■ Driving regulations of new vehicle break-in period

Within the first 621 miles (1,000 km):

- Prohibit driving at full speed;
- Driving speed should not be more than 62 mph (100 km/h);
- Avoid driving at maximum speed in each gear.

Within the first 621 miles (1,000 km) to 932 miles (1,500 km):

- Driving speed can be gradually increased to the highest speed;
- Engine speed can be gradually increased to the maximum allowable speed.

■ Driving recommendations after break-in period

- When driving a vehicle, the maximum speed which engine allows to run in short time is 6,000 r/min. When shifting manually, shift to nearby high gear while the tachometer pointer reaches the red indicator zone.
- Engine speed should not be too low while driving, it is necessary to shift to the appropriate gear. When the engine is cold, do not run the engine at its maximum speed whether in neutral or in other driving gears.

■ tyre and wheel break-in recommendations:

When starting to use new tires, the best adhesion is not available. Therefore, new tires also need break-in, so the vehicle should be driven slowly and especially carefully within the first 62 miles (100 km) of driving.

■ Braking system break-in recommendations:

New brake lining also needs break-in. Because the brakes cannot provide the ideal brake friction during the first 124 miles (200 km). If the braking efficiency is slightly worse at this stage, increasing depression force on the pedal appropriately. This condition also applies to each replacement of braking lining later.



ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Avoid running engine at unnecessary high speed. Switching to a high gear in time is helpful to save fuel, reduce operation noise and reduce environmental pollution.

1-7. How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle

How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle

Saving fuel is largely determined by vehicle conditions and driving habit. Do not overuse the vehicle, which also helps to extend vehicle's life.

The followings are specific tips for fuel saving:

1. Make sure to maintain proper tyre inflation pressure. Insufficient tyre inflation pressure will lead to tyre wear and fuel waste.
2. The vehicle should not be loaded with unnecessary weight. Heavy load increases engine load, resulting in high fuel consumption.
3. Avoid warm-up idling for a long time. The vehicle can be driven once the engine runs smoothly. The warm-up time in cold winter will be longer than other seasons.
4. Accelerate slowly and smoothly. Avoid sudden starting.
5. Avoid engine idling for a long time. If you need to park vehicle and wait for a long time, you should turn off the engine and turn it on again later.
6. Avoid engine out of gear or overspeed. Select proper gears according to driving road conditions.
7. Avoid continuous acceleration and deceleration. Stop-and-go driving will waste the fuel.
8. Avoid unnecessary stopping and braking. You should keep a stable speed. Obey the traffic lights while driving to minimize parking times, or take full advantage of road without traffic lights to drive vehicle. Maintain a proper driving distance with other vehicles to avoid sudden braking. It will also reduce brake wear.
9. Avoid areas with heavy traffic or traffic jams as possible.
10. Do not hold your foot on clutch or brake pedals for a long time. This will cause premature wear, overheating and high fuel consumption.
11. Keep a proper vehicle speed on the highway. The faster vehicle speed, the more fuel consumption. Decreasing vehicle speed will save fuel.
12. Keep proper front wheel alignment. Avoid collision with road curbs and reduce your vehicle speed when driving on rough road surfaces. Improper front wheel alignment will not only quicken tyre wear, but also increase engine load.
13. Avoid contacting vehicle chassis with mud, etc.
14. Adjust vehicle and keep it in optimal working condition. Dirty air filter, improper valve clearance, dirty spark plugs, dirty oil and grease, brakes without proper adjustment, etc. can reduce engine performance and waste fuel. You must perform maintenance periodically if you want to extend your vehicle's life and reduce your driving costs. Your vehicle needs to be serviced more frequently if you always driving under severe conditions.

1. INTRODUCTION

CAUTION

Never turn off engine when driving downhill. The power steering system and brake system will not operate normally when engine is not running.

1-8. Precautions Before Driving Vehicle

Safety Check

It is better to do a safety check before driving vehicle. A few minutes of checking can help ensure safe and pleasant driving.

WARNING

If you perform this check in an enclosed garage, make sure there is adequate ventilation.

Before Starting Engine

■ Outside vehicle

1. Tires (including spare tyre): Check tyre pressure with a tyre pressure gauge and carefully check tires for cuts, damage or excessive wear.
2. Wheel bolts: Make sure no wheel bolts are missing or loose.
3. Fluid leaks: After the vehicle has been parked for a while, check underneath for leaking fuel, oil, coolant or other fluids (Water dripping from air conditioning after use is normal).
4. Lights: Make sure the headlights, daytime running lights, brake lights, fog lights, turn signal lights and other lights are working properly.
5. Intake grilles: Remove snow, leaves or other obstructions from the intake grilles in front of windshield.

■ Inside vehicle

1. Spare tools: Make sure you have spare tools, such as jack, wheel bolt wrench and spare tyre.
2. Seat belts: Check if the buckles can be locked securely. Make sure belts are not worn or frayed.
3. Instrument cluster and controls: Especially make sure the malfunction indicator lights, indicator lights, and controls are working properly.
4. Brakes: Make sure the pedal has enough clearance.

■ Engine compartment and engine

1. Spare fuses: Make sure spare fuses are available. All the fuses with amperage ratings designated on the fuse box cover should be provided.
2. Coolant level: Make sure coolant level is proper.

3. Battery and cables: Check for corroded or loose terminals and a cracked case. Check the cables for good condition and connections.
4. Wiring: Check for damaged, loose or broken wires.
5. Fuel lines: Check the lines for leaks or loose connections.

■ Hood

Make sure the hood is locked completely before driving. Otherwise, the hood may tilt up and block front view when vehicle is moving, which could lead to an accident.

After Starting Engine

1. Exhaust system: Listen for any leakage. Repair any leaks immediately if such condition occurs.
2. Engine oil level: Stop vehicle on level ground, turn off engine and wait for 5 minutes, pull out the dipstick to check if the engine oil level is proper.

When Driving

1. Gauges and meters: Make sure each indication of gauges and meters is working properly.
2. Brakes: At a safe place, check that the vehicle is not pulled to one side when the brakes are applied.
3. Other abnormal conditions: Check for loose parts and leaks. Listen for abnormal noises.

Parking Operations

Proper parking is an important part of safety driving, park the vehicle in a place with wide road, good view without affecting traffic. Parking operation steps are as follows:

1. Depress clutch (vehicle with manual transmission) and brake pedal until the vehicle is completely stopped.
2. Confirm that the electronic parking is enabled.
3. For vehicle with automatic transmission: Move shift lever to "P" position.
4. Vehicle power is switched to OFF mode.

CAUTION

When you leave vehicle, make sure to lock your vehicle and carry the vehicle's key with you.

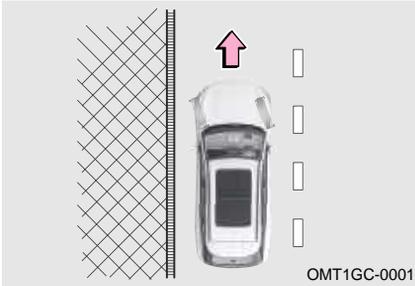
Parking on Slope

Parking vehicle on a slope is mainly by brake force of park brake. Failure to apply park brake or park brake malfunction may cause the vehicle to slide

1. INTRODUCTION

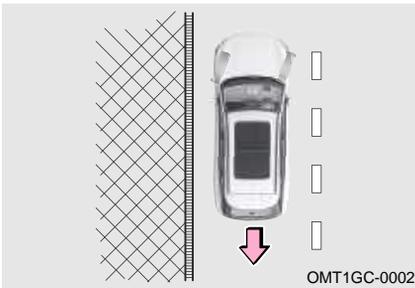
downwards along slope and personal injury or damage to vehicle. When parking on a slope, it is better to face tires toward one side of vehicle, to prevent vehicle from moving accidentally.

■ Parking on downhill with curb



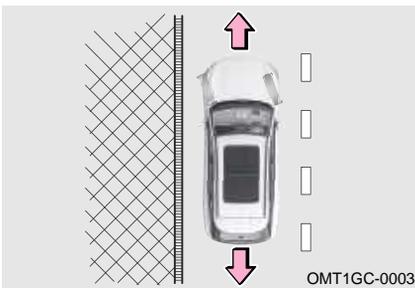
If there is curb on roadside, turn steering wheel to left by a certain angle to make front part of front left wheel close to or against the curb, to prevent vehicle from sliding forward along the slope, then apply the park brake.

■ Parking on uphill with curb



If there is curb on roadside, turn steering wheel to right by a certain angle to make rear part of front right wheel close to or against the curb, to prevent vehicle from sliding backward along the slope, then apply the park brake.

■ Parking on uphill or downhill (without curb)



If there is no curb on roadside, turn steering wheel right by a large angle, to prevent vehicle from driving into center of road after sliding forward/backward along the slope. Turn steering wheel to side of road so that vehicle is far away from center of road when moving, then apply the park brake.

■ Carrying passengers

Before driving, make sure all passengers sit in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened. Do not let the passengers sit in the places where there are no seats and seat belts, as they are likely to be seriously injured during a collision.

■ Locking the vehicle

- When leaving the vehicle unattended, carry smart key with you and lock all the doors, even if parking the vehicle in the garage or on the sidewalk in front of your house.
- Park the vehicle in bright and spacious places as much as possible, and do not expose valuable items.

■ Exhaust gas

- Avoid inhaling the engine exhaust gas. It contains carbon monoxide (CO), which is a harmful, colorless and odorless gas. It can cause unconsciousness or even death after inhaling.
- Make sure the exhaust system has no leakage holes or loose connections. The exhaust system should be checked usually. If a change in exhaust gas sound is found, please have the system checked immediately.
- Do not run the engine in a garage or an enclosed area except for the time needed to drive the vehicle in or out. The exhaust gas cannot escape, which may cause serious injury.
- Do not stay in a parked vehicle for a long time with the engine running. If it is unavoidable, vehicle should be parked in a spacious area and adjust heating and cooling system to forcibly introduce outside air into vehicle.
- Keep the back door closed while driving. An open or unclosed back door may cause exhaust gas to enter the vehicle.
- To achieve proper operation of vehicle ventilation system, keep intake grilles free of snow, leaves, or other obstructions.
- If you smell exhaust fumes in vehicle, open windows to allow fresh air to enter and check vehicle condition.

Exhaust System Inspection

The exhaust system should be checked in the following situations:

1. When you smell the exhaust fumes;
2. When you notice a change in the sound of exhaust system;
3. When exhaust system is damaged due to vehicle collision;
4. When the vehicle is lifted for inspection and repair.

1. INTRODUCTION

1-9. Off-road Driving Precautions

Off-road Driving

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of serious personal injury or damage to your vehicle:

- Be careful when driving off the road. Do not drive in dangerous areas.
- Place both hands on the outer ring of the steering wheel when driving off the road.
- Always check your brakes for effectiveness immediately after driving on the road covered with sand, mud, shallow water or snow.
- The driver and all passengers should fasten their seat belts whenever vehicle is moving.

WARNING

- After driving on road surfaces covered with tall grass, mud, gravel, sand, ruts, etc., check if there is grass, bush, paper, rags, stone, sand, etc. adhering to or trapped on underbody. Clear off any above materials from the underbody. If driving vehicle with those matters trapped on or adhering to the underbody, a breakdown or fire could occur.
- When driving off road or on rugged terrain, high speed driving, jumping, sharp turning and striking objects, etc. are forbidden. Failure to do so may cause loss of control or vehicle rollover, resulting in death or severe personnel injury. You are also risking expensive damage to your vehicle's suspension and chassis.

1-10. Precautions When Driving in Rainy Condition

When Driving on Slippery Road Surfaces

Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, windows may become fogged-up and road will be slippery.

- Do not drive at high speed when driving on an expressway in rain, because there may be a layer of water between tires and road surface, preventing steering system and brakes from operating properly.

CAUTION

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering on slippery road surfaces may cause tyre slippage and reduce your ability to control vehicle, resulting in an accident.
- Sudden changes in engine speed, such as sudden engine braking may cause vehicle to skid, resulting in an accident.
- After driving through a puddle, lightly depress brake pedal to make sure brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake lining may prevent brakes from functioning properly. If brake lining on one side is wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected, resulting in an accident.

Driving Through Water



The vehicle could be seriously damaged when driving on a road that has flooded.

1. INTRODUCTION

CAUTION

- Never drive through water that is deeper than wheel rim.
- Water intrusion into engine can cause it to stall, or cause serious internal damage.
- Water can wash the grease from the wheel bearing, causing rusting and premature abrasion.
- Driving through water may cause damage to your vehicle drive train components. Always visually inspect your vehicle's fluids (e.g. engine oil, transmission fluid, etc.) for signs of leakage after driving through water. Do not continue to operate vehicle if any fluid leaks, as this may result in further damage.
- Vehicle traction and braking performance will decrease while driving through water. The braking distance will increase. Sand and mud that have accumulated around the brake discs may affect the braking efficiency and may damage the brake system components. After driving through water, slightly depress the brake pedal for several times to dry the brakes off.

1-11. Winter Driving Precautions

Winter Driving Tips

- **Coolant:** Make sure that coolant has anti-freezing function. Only use recommended coolant. More details about coolant type selection.
- **Battery and cables:** Low temperature will decrease power of battery. Sufficient power should be stored in battery for starting in winter.
- **Oil:** In winter, it is recommended to choose appropriate engine oil according to the local temperature condition. The lower viscosity at low temperature, the better fluidity at low temperature, indicating that the lower the ambient temperature at which the oil can be used. More details about oil type selection.
- **Door locks:** Avoid door locks being frozen. Deicing agent or glycerin should be sprayed into door lock holes.
- **Washer fluid:** Use washer fluid containing antifreeze. This product is available at authorized service station and most vehicle component distributors.
- **Mudguards:** Avoid ice and snow accumulation under mudguards. Failure to do so may cause difficult steering. When driving in cold weather, you should often stop vehicle to check for ice and snow accumulation under mudguards. It is recommended that you should take some necessary emergency items with you depending on different driving destinations. Items that need to be put in vehicle: Tyre chains, window snow scraper, sand or salt bag, signal flasher, shovel, jumper cable, etc.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not use water as a substitute for coolant.
- Do not use engine coolant or other alternative washer fluid, otherwise vehicle paint will be damaged.

Driving on Road Covered with Ice and Snow

Rapid acceleration on slippery road surfaces, such as snow or ice covered roads, may cause the rear wheels slipping to right or left. Therefore, please drive at low speed and operate carefully.

It is possible to build up a layer of water film between the tyre and road surface when driving on wet or slushy roads. This may prevent the steering and braking from operating properly. To reduce the torque and avoid slipping, you can use 2nd gear (vehicle with manual transmission) when starting off vehicle on ice or snow covered road surfaces. It is recommended that you enable ESP function on this occasion.

■ Driving on silt and ice and snow road

If drive wheel is stuck in silt or ice and snow, please attempt to shake vehicle at low speed and drive forward and backward repeatedly. Shift the shift lever between forward position and reverse position several times and depress accelerator pedal slightly. Avoid shifting the shift lever between forward position and reverse position for a long period of time, failure to do so may cause excessive transmission wear.

Tyre Chains

Purchase a set of tyre chains that match size of the vehicle tires. Pay attention to the following precautions when installing and removing chains:

1. Follow local regulations when using chains;
2. Install and remove tyre chains in a safe location;
3. Install tyre chains by following the instructions provided with the tyre chains;
4. Chains can only be installed on drive wheels;
5. It is recommended to use the beef tendon chains or rubber chains with a thickness not exceeding 12 mm, otherwise, tires, rims, drive system, brake system and wheel guard plates may be damaged, vehicle damages resulting from improper use of chains are not covered by warranty;

1. INTRODUCTION

6. Please consult authorized service station for details about wheels, tyre size.

CAUTION

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents. Failure to do so may result in the vehicle unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury.

- Regulations regarding the use of tyre chains vary depending on location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing tyre chains;
- Be sure to use chains that are suitable for your vehicle. Installing chain will affect vehicle handling, please drive carefully. Using improper chains or improper installing of chains may cause an accident and lead to injuries;
- Please follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the chains to install and remove chains, park the vehicle in a safe place before installation and removal. Be sure to turn off the engine before installing chains (automatic transmission is in P position), place the traffic warning signs if necessary;
- Do not drive vehicle at more than 18 mph (30 km/h) when chains are installed on vehicle, or refer to the vehicle speed limit specified by the manufacturer of chains, whichever is lower. It should avoid dangerous road conditions such as bumps, potholes, sharp turns etc. when installing chains, do not turn steering wheel sharply, lock brake urgently, accelerate and decelerate suddenly etc.

1-12. Cybersecurity Notice

Cybersecurity Support Service Update or Termination Notice

The company has provided cybersecuritysupport services in the corresponding software and equipment of the Internet of Vehicles service, and regularly or irregularly updates or terminates this service.

The scrapped vehicle will stop providing Network Security Services; Network Security Services will maintain essential service after the vehicle is discontinued for 10 years.

We can notify customers through website announcements, emails, in-vehicle systems, mobile phone text messages, voice calls, etc. according to the specific content of the notification.

Email, SMS, and voice calls will be sent to the email address and mobile phone listed in the customer's account registration information.

Cybersecurity Notice for Scrapping or Resale

Before you resell or scrap the vehicle, that is, when you no longer hold the vehicle, you should clear the personal information in the vehicle terminal by yourself.

The company does not assume any responsibility if the personal information of the vehicle terminal is leaked to a third party due to improper operation.

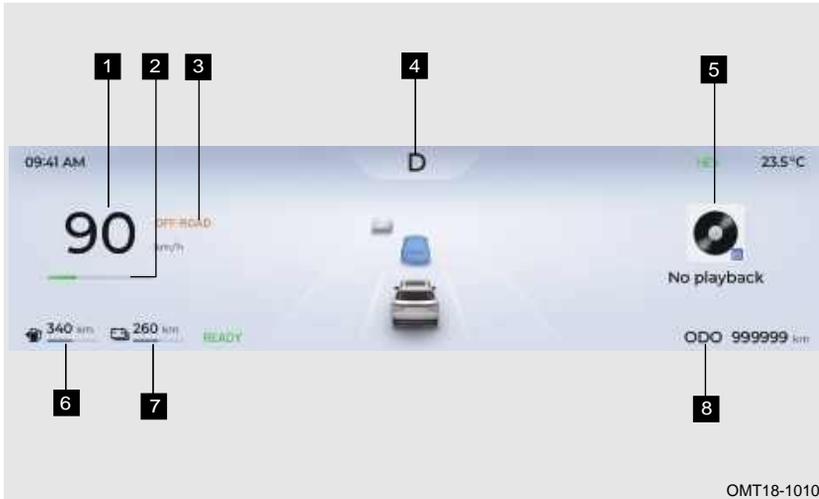
Our franchised dealers are familiar with the relevant regulations and can provide you with consulting services.

2-1. Instrument Cluster	Smart Vehicle Locating Function	49
Instrument Cluster Overview	Intelligent Headlight Control (IHC)	49
Operation/Malfunction Indicator	Fogging Instructions for Light.....	50
2-2. Steering Wheel	2-6. Seat	
Horn.....	Correct Sitting Posture.....	51
Heated Steering Wheel	Head Restraint.....	51
Adjusting Steering Wheel	Front Seat.....	52
Steering Wheel Buttons	Second Row Seat	53
2-3. Rear View Mirror	Seat Heating Function	54
Inside Rear View Mirror.....	Seat Ventilation Function (If Equipped).....	54
Outside Rear View Mirror	Driver Seat Memory Function	54
Outside Rear View Mirror Memory Function	Easy Seat Access/Exit Function (If Equipped).....	55
Rear View Mirror Automatic Adjustment When Reversing (If Equipped)	2-7. Seat Belt	
2-4. Wiper System	Seat Belt.....	55
Wiper Operation.....	Seat Belt Pretensioner	60
Replacing Wiper Blade.....	2-8. Child Restraint System	
2-5. Lighting System	Child Restraint System.....	61
Exterior Lighting.....	Recommended Child Restraint Systems	63
Interior Lighting	Top Tether	64
Headlight Leveling Adjusting.....	Installing Child Restraint Systems	65
Follow Me Home Function	Reminder for Children Staying in Rear Seat	68

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

2-1. Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster Overview



- 1** Vehicle speed display: Driving speed (unit: km/h).
- 2** Instantaneous power consumption: The ratio of the current output electric drive power to the maximum electric drive power (unit: %).
- 3** Driving mode: Indicates the current driving mode of vehicle.
- 4** Gear position information: The selected gear position information.
- 5** Information display area: Short press "☰" button on steering wheel to circularly switch among navigation - since startup - since reset- instantaneous fuel consumption - tyre pressure display.
- 6** Fuel level display: Current remaining fuel in fuel tank.
- 7** Power display: The current remaining SOC of power battery.
- 8** Mileage display: Driving mileage of the vehicle (common unit: km).

READ

- Driving mileage is calculated by the on-board computer and can be only for reference.
- When the vehicle is accelerating, braking urgently, turning sharply or driving on a slope, the fuel gauge reading might be inaccurate.
- Speedometer is affected by tyre size used in vehicle. Only tires of original size can be used, otherwise it will not indicate the correct speed.

⚠ CAUTION

- If engine coolant temperature gauge indication remains in low temperature range for a long time, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
- Never open the coolant reservoir cap if engine coolant temperature gauge indication is in overheating range. Check if coolant level is too low after engine cools down. Never run engine when coolant level is too low, or the engine will be seriously damaged.

Operation/Malfunction Indicator

When vehicle power is turned to ON mode, some malfunction indicators will come on for a short time, indicating that system is performing self-check. If one system malfunction indicator remains on or flashes after starting the vehicle, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

The operation indicator remains on, used to alert driver the operating condition of a certain vehicle' s system.

Malfunction indicator remains on or flashes, used to alert driver that a certain system of the vehicle is malfunctioning.

Name	Indicator	Description
Daytime running light indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that daytime running light is turned on.
Position light indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that position light is turned on.
Turn signal indicator		When the left or right turn signal lights are turned on, the turn signal light on corresponding side flashes. When hazard light is turned on, both left and right turn signal lights will flash simultaneously.
High beam light indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that high beam light is turned on.
Rear fog light indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that rear fog light s turned on.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

Intelligent high beam assist indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that intelligent high beam assist is in operating condition.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that intelligent high beam assist is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Front seat belt indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that front seat belt is not buckled or fastened firmly. Wear seat belt and drive safely.
Second row seat belt indicator		This indicator is used to alert that the second row seat belt is not buckled or fastened firmly. Wear seat belt and drive safely.
Electric parking brake system indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that electric parking brake system is in operating condition currently. The indicator flashes during sudden braking, it is normal and no need to deal with. If it flashes in other cases, it indicates that the system is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that electric parking brake system is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Auto hold system indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that auto hold system is turned on.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that auto hold system is activated.
Electronic stability program system indicator		The indicator flashes to indicate that electronic stability program system is in operating condition.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that electronic stability program system is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Electronic stability program system OFF indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that electronic stability program system is turned off.
Hill descent control system indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that hill descent control system is in operating condition.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that hill descent control system is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Anti-lock brake system indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that anti-lock brake system is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Brake system indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that brake fluid level is low or brake system is malfunctioning. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Blind spot detection system indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that blind spot detection system enters level 1 alarm state.
		The indicator flashes to indicate that blind spot detection system enters level 2 alarm state.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that blind spot detection system is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Active speed limit indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that active speed limit enters pre-speed limit state.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that active speed limit enters speed limit state.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

Adaptive cruise control system indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that adaptive cruise control system enters the pre-cruising state.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that adaptive cruise control system enters cruising state.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that adaptive cruise control system is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Lane departure assist (lane departure warning/lane departure prevention) indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that lane departure assist is in ON/limit condition.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that lane departure assist is in standby condition currently. The indicator flashes to indicate that lane departure assist is activated.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that lane departure assist is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Emergency lane keeping indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that emergency lane keeping is in ON/limit condition currently.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that emergency lane keeping is in standby condition currently. The indicator flashes to indicate that emergency lane keeping is activated.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that the emergency lane keeping is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Automatic emergency braking system indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that automatic emergency braking system is in operating condition currently.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that the automatic emergency braking system is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Traffic jam assist system/ integrated cruise assist system indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system is pre-activated.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system is activated.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Idling stop-start system indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that idling stop-start system operating conditions are met.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that idling stop-start system does not meet the safe start conditions or is turned off. The indicator flashes to indicate that idling stop-start system is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Gasoline particulate filter indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that gasoline particulate filter is full, please increase the speed and clean it.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that gasoline particulate filter is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

Electric power steering system indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that electric power steering system is not initialized or calibrated. Please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that electric power steering system is malfunctioning. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Transmission indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that transmission system is malfunctioning. Please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that transmission system is malfunctioning. Please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Airbag indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that airbag is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Tyre pressure monitoring system indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that tyre pressure is incorrect. Please check if tyre pressure is too low or if temperature is too high. If tyre pressure is normal, please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
High coolant temperature warning indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that engine coolant temperature is high. Drive vehicle to a safe area and stop, turn vehicle power to OFF mode after idling for several minutes. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

EPC malfunction indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that engine system is malfunctioning. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
MIL malfunction indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that the part connected to OBD and related to emission or OBD system itself is malfunctioning. Please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Maintenance indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that the vehicle needs maintenance. Please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Warning indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that vehicle is malfunctioning or has abnormal information. You can inquiry the relevant alarm information in the fault inquiry screen. If it cannot be solved, please contact the authorized service station immediately.
Door open reminder indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver of the opening and closing status of driver door. When vehicle speed is ≤ 1 mph (3 km/h) with a door open, there is no alarm sound, and the corresponding door open indicator remains on in red; When the vehicle speed is ≥ 1 mph (3 km/h), the corresponding door open indicator flashes, and the door opening sound alarm is triggered at the same time.
Fatigue driving indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate to take a rest when driving time exceeds the set time.
Overspeed alarm indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate to pay attention to the vehicle speed when vehicle speed exceeds the set speed limit.
Low engine oil pressure warning indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that engine oil pressure is low. Drive vehicle to a safe area and stop. Please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

Charging system indicator		This indicator remains on to indicate the condition of charging system. If this indicator does not remain on when vehicle power is turned to ON mode, or it remains on after engine starts, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Low fuel level warning indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that vehicle is running out of fuel. Please add fuel as soon as possible.
Charging indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that charging connection device is connected.
Discharging indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that discharging connection device is connected.
Power battery low charge warning indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that the power battery is low. Please charge in time.
Severely depleted power battery indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that the power battery is seriously depleted. Please charge in time.
Power limit indicator		This indicator indicates that the power and acceleration performance of vehicle are limited. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
High voltage insulation malfunction indicator		This indicator remains on to alert the driver that the insulating property of high voltage system decreases. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
High voltage severe insulation malfunction indicator		This indicator remains on to alert the driver that the insulating property of high voltage system seriously decreases. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Power battery malfunction indicator		This indicator indicates vehicle power battery is malfunctioning. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

<p>Driving ready indicator</p>	<p>READY</p>	<p>This indicator is used to alert driver that vehicle is ready for normal driving. If the indicator does not come on, it indicates that vehicle is malfunctioning or other conditions are not met, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately</p>
--------------------------------	--------------	---

2-2. Steering Wheel

Horn



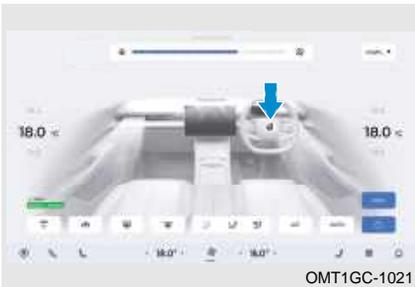
OMT1GC-1020

To sound the horn, press area near horn mark on the steering wheel.

READ

Obey local regulations regarding usage of vehicle horns.

Heated Steering Wheel



OMT1GC-1021

After starting the vehicle, press "

on the air conditioning system screen to turn on steering wheel heating function. After pressing the button again, steering wheel heating function is turned off.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

CAUTION

When the following conditions are met, the steering wheel heating function will be turned on:

- Engine is operating.
- Voltage of battery is in normal range.
- Steering heated switch is pressed.

When any of the following conditions is met, the function will turn off or pause after it works for a period of time:

- Engine stops.
- Steering heated switch is pressed again.

Adjusting Steering Wheel



Stop vehicle at a safe place away from major traffic, turn vehicle power to OFF mode:

Step 1: Push down adjustment lever and release it;

Step 2: Adjust steering wheel upward and downward/forward and backward to a comfortable angle;

Step 3: Hold steering wheel steady and push adjustment lever to original position;

Step 4: Check if the steering wheel is shaking. Repeat operations of step 3 if shaking.

WARNING

- Do not adjust steering wheel while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.
- Make sure the steering wheel is securely locked before driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.

Steering Wheel Buttons



1. Cruising mode

- Short press the roller to turn on CCS/ACC, and short press it again to cancel.
- Long press to switch ACC/TJA function (if equipped).
- Roll the roller to left/right to adjust cruise distance. Roll it to left to decrease distance, and roll it to right to increase distance.
- Roll the roller up/down to adjust cruise speed. Roll the roller up to increase vehicle speed, and roll it down to decrease vehicle speed.

2. Rear view mirror adjustment mode

- Roll the roller up/down to adjust left outside rear view mirror up/down angle.
- Roll the roller to left/right to adjust left outside rear view mirror left/right angle.

■ "🌀" button: Turn active speed limit function ON/OFF.

■ "☆" button: Short press to switch each function setting screen; Long press to enter custom screen to adjust the steering wheel button function yourself.



1. Multimedia (default)

- Roll the roller up/down to adjust the volume.
- Roll the roller to left: Switch to previous track/hang up and reject the call/reject third-party call.
- Roll the roller to right: Switch to next track/answer the call/answer the call continuously.
- Short press the roller to pause non-multimedia/multimedia playback. When the phone mute alarm window pops up, long press the roller to confirm.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

2. Rear view mirror adjustment mode

- Roll the roller up/down to adjust right outside rear view mirror up/down angle.
- Roll the roller to left/right to adjust right outside rear view mirror left/right angle.

■ "☰" button: Switch instrument cluster function.

■ "☰" button: Turn voice function ON/OFF.

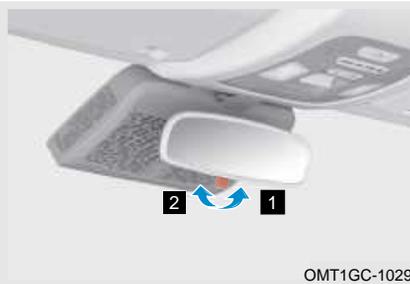
READ

Due to different configurations, the steering wheel button functions are for reference only, please refer to your own vehicle.

2-3. Rear View Mirror

Inside Rear View Mirror

Manual glare-resistant (if equipped)



Before driving at night, adjust the inside rear view mirror lever to the anti-glare position, which can reduce the reflected light from the headlights of vehicles behind.

- 1 Anti-glare position
- 2 Normal position

Automatic anti-glare (if equipped)



When driving at night, the light sensor installed in front/rear of the inside rear view mirror automatically detects the reflected light from the headlights of vehicles behind and automatically adjusts the lens angle to reduce the reflected light from the headlights of vehicles behind.

Inside rear view mirror adjustment



OMT1GC-1031

Adjust inside rear view mirror to a proper position before driving, to make sure that driver can achieve an optimum view.

Outside Rear View Mirror

Outside rear view mirror adjustment



OMT1GC-1032

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, click "☺" button on the control center to enter the Rear Mirror Adjustment screen. Rear view mirror can be adjusted by steering wheel button on current page.



OMT1GC-1033

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, rear view mirror can be adjusted by steering wheel button on current page through Audio System - Settings - Quick Control - Rear Mirror Adjustment.

WARNING

- Do not adjust outside rear view mirror while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.
- Image displayed on outside rear view mirror may differ from the actual, so always drive carefully.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

Folding/unfolding of outside rear view mirror



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, click "  " button on the control center to fold/unfold outside rear view mirror.



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, click "  " button through Audio System - Settings - Quick Control to fold/unfold outside rear view mirror.



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, turn on automatic folding of exterior mirrors through Audio System - Settings - Quick Control; In disarming/arming, outside rear view mirror will be folded/unfolded automatically.

READ

According to visual field requirements, folding angles of the left and right outside rear view mirrors are different. Therefore, when power outside rear view mirrors automatically fold, the left and right outside rear view mirrors are not synchronized, which is normal.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not fold/extend the power outside rear view mirror manually, otherwise it may cause the folding function to fail.
- When folding/extending the outside rear view mirror, do not touch its surface to prevent damage to it with excessive force.
- In cold winter, it is recommended to turn off the outside rear view mirror automatic folding function. This will prevent the outside rear view mirror from being frozen in folding position due to accumulated snow or rain.

Outside Rear View Mirror Memory Function



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, it can restore/save and update the memory position according to your needs through Audio System - Settings - Quick Control - Rear Mirror Adjustment.

📖 READ

Seat and outside rear view mirror memory are saved and recalled at the same time.

Rear View Mirror Automatic Adjustment When Reversing (If Equipped)

When vehicle is reversing (shift to R), outside rear view mirror will flip down automatically, so that you can see the curb below; If your visual field cannot be satisfied, you can adjust position of outside rear view mirror lens. When shifting out of R position, the position will be saved automatically (outside rear view mirror automatic flipping down position).



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, set automatic adjustment of rearview mirror when reversing (Close/Both sides/Left only/Right only) through Audio System - Settings - Quick Control.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

■ Return to position before flipping down under following conditions:

1. When shifting out of R position.
2. Vehicle speed is higher than 6mph (10 km/h).
3. Switch vehicle power to OFF mode.

2-4. Wiper System

Wiper Operation

Front wiper operation



Turn vehicle power to ON mode:

High speed mode: Rotate the switch to "HI" position to operate quickly and continuously.

Low speed mode: Rotate the switch to "LO" position to operate slowly and continuously.

OFF: Rotate the switch to "OFF" position to turn off wiper automatically.

Auto mode: Rotate the switch to "-AUTO" position, automatically control the wiping speed of the wiper according to amount of rainfall outside.



Front windshield washer: Windshield washer button has two positions. Press the left button to first position, the wiper blade will perform MIST wiping and release the button to stop wiping. Continue to press inward to the second position, the washer will spray water and wipe, and release the button to stop the washer from spraying water.

Auto wiper sensitivity



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, click "  " button on the control center to set wiper sensitivity cycle.



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, set wiper sensitivity (Low/Standard/High/Maximum) through Audio System - Settings - Vehicle Settings.

Rear wiper operation



Turn vehicle power to ON mode:
 Press "  " button and rear wiper operates; Press it again and rear wiper is turned off.
 Press "  " button, the rear washer sprays water, and rear wiper operates simultaneously.

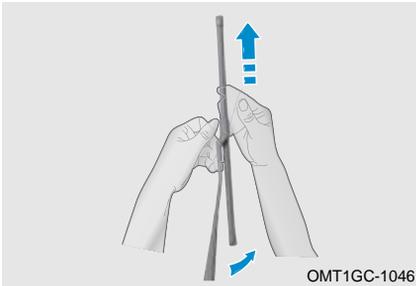
2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

CAUTION

- Take care to prevent the wrong addition of antifreeze during adding washer fluid.
- When operating wiper switch to spray water, do not exceed 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not operate wiper switch to spray water when there is no washer fluid in reservoir.
- Do not try to clear a nozzle with a pin or other objects when it becomes blocked, or it will be damaged.
- Do not operate wiper switch when the windshield is dry, as this may damage wiper blade and scratch the windshield.
- Do not operate wiper switch if there are obstacles on windshield, as this may scratch the windshield and damage wiper motor.
- Do not mix water with the washer fluid. Otherwise, it may cause the washer fluid to freeze and damage the washing tank and other parts of the washer system.
- In cold winter, always check if wiper blade is frozen onto windshield before operating wiper switch. If so, defrost it before using, otherwise it may damage wiper blade and wiper motor.

Replacing Wiper Blade

Replacing front wiper blade



Step 1: Shortly press the left button of wiper switch to enter maintenance mode within several seconds after turning vehicle power to OFF mode;

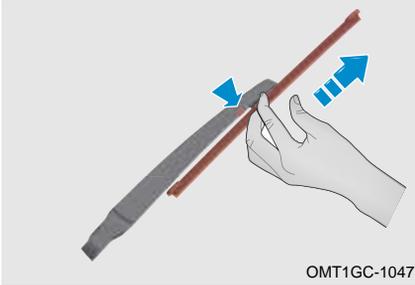
Step 2: Lift the front wiper arm and hold;

Step 3: After rotating to limit position counterclockwise, push wiper blades upward while pressing the lock button, so as to remove the blades;

Step 4: Install the new wiper blades in reverse order, and make sure that the fixing clamp is locked firmly;

Step 5: Check that front wipers operate properly.

Replacing rear wiper blade



Step 1: Turn vehicle power to OFF mode, and press rear wiper "  " button within a few seconds to enter the maintenance mode;

Step 2: Lift the rear wiper arm and hold;

Step 3: Pull wiper blades outward while pressing the buttons on both sides, so as to remove the blades;

Step 4: Install the new wiper blades in reverse order, and be sure to install them in place;

Step 5: Check that rear wipers operate properly.

READ

It is recommended that you have wiper blades replaced by someone at authorized service station to ensure correct fitting.

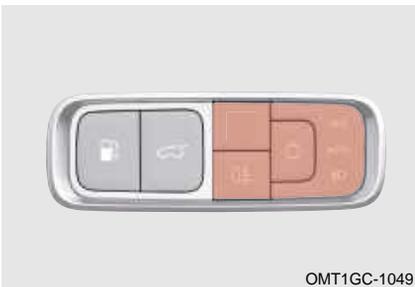
CAUTION

Make sure that the wiper arm returns to its original position before driving. otherwise it may damage the vehicle and cause an accident.

2-5. Lighting System

Exterior Lighting

Headlight switch



Turn vehicle power to ON mode:

Auto-sensing mode "AUTO": When auto-sensing mode is turned on, the intensity of external light is sensed, and on/off of position lights, low beam lights, and license plate lights is automatically controlled.

Position lights "  ": Turn on position lights, license plate lights, ambient lights and backlights.

Low beam lights "  ": Turn on low beam lights and keep position lights coming on.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

Rear fog lights: When low beam light is turned on, press "  " button to turn on rear fog lights.

READ

- When turning off low beam lights, rear fog lights is turned off at the same time.
- When parking vehicle for a long time or before leaving vehicle, make sure that headlight is turned off to prevent the battery from being depleted. Failure to do so may cause that the vehicle cannot be started.

High beam light

■ High beam lights ON/OFF



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, when turning on low beam lights, pull wiper switch away from steering wheel side and release, high beam lights come on; Pull towards steering wheel side and release to turn off high beam lights.

■ High beam lights flash



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, pull wiper switch towards the steering wheel and release it to flash the high beam lights once. At the same time, high beam lights indicator in instrument cluster flashes once.

READ

High beam lights can flash when the low beam lights are off.

Turn signal light



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, dial wiper switch upward, right turn signal light is turned on; Dial downward, left turn signal light is turned on.

When turn signal lights are turned on, the indicator in the instrument cluster will flash. As vehicle is turning back after turning, wiper switch automatically returns to center position.

Note: During a slight steering wheel turn, wiper switch may not automatically return to original position.

■ Lane change assist function

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, pull turn signal light switch once but not too far over. This will make the indicator flash 3 times.

Daytime running light

After vehicle starts, the daytime running lights come on.

Brake light

Depress the brake pedal, brake light and high mounted stop light turn on.

Back-up light

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, shift to R, back-up light turns on.

Interior Lighting

Front dome light



Touch the front left/right dome light, the front dome light on corresponding side comes on.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

Second row dome light



Press "  " switch, the second row dome light comes on/goes off.

Headlight Leveling Adjusting



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, set headlight height adjustment (level 0/level 1/level 2/level 3) through Audio System - Settings - Light.

Follow Me Home Function



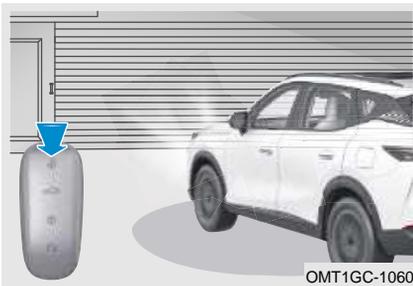
Turn vehicle power to ON mode, turn on headlight delay through Audio System - Settings - Light.



ON: Turn vehicle power to OFF mode, turn on headlight automatic mode before stopping. When the vehicle is in a dim environment, press lock button on smart key, and the vehicle is armed successfully. Low beam lights automatically come on for tens of seconds. Press lock button on smart key to activate it again.

OFF: Turn vehicle power to ACC/ON mode, and turn off the headlight (OFF) or reaches the set operating time, the follow me home function will be turned off automatically, low beam lights will turn off immediately.

Smart Vehicle Locating Function



ON: Turn vehicle power to OFF mode, turn on headlight automatic mode before stopping. When the vehicle is in a dim environment, press unlock button on smart key, low beam lights will come on for tens of seconds. Press unlock button to activate it again.

OFF: Turn vehicle power to ACC/ON mode, turn off the headlight (OFF) or reaches the set operating time, the smart vehicle locating function will be turned off automatically, low beam lights will turn off immediately.

Intelligent Headlight Control (IHC)

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, turn on intelligent headlight control through Audio System - Settings - Light.

After the vehicle starts, turn on headlight automatic mode. When the low beam lights automatically come on, pull wiper switch away from steering wheel side and release, "⚡" white indicator on instrument cluster remains on, and intelligent headlight control is activated; When intelligent headlight control is activated and vehicle speed is higher than 24 mph (40 km/h), intelligent headlight control automatically turns headlight high beam on/off according to road conditions such as meeting, following, and overtaking.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

When the intelligent headlight control is activated, the headlight high beam turns on or flashes, the white indicator "  " on instrument cluster goes off. Pull wiper switch away from steering wheel side and release, intelligent headlight control is reactivated.

READ

- When ambient brightness is too high, the intelligent headlight control turns the headlight high beam off automatically.
- When the vehicle speed is lower than 18 mph (30 km/h), the intelligent headlight control turns off the headlight high beam automatically.
- When the left/right turn signal light is activated, the intelligent headlight control cannot turn the headlight high beam on/off automatically.

Fogging Instructions for Light

When the weather is cold or humid, the inner side of lights will fog up due to the difference in temperature between the inside and outside. This fog has no effect on service life of lighting system. The vehicle lights generate fog, which gradually begins to disappear in the inner surface of lens for headlight within 30 minutes after the low and high beam lights are turned on. After a period of lighting, the fog disappears naturally. This is normal.

WARNING

- Following guidelines for driving through water (for example: water depth, speed, etc.) to avoid any water entering the lights.
- After opening light dust cover, reinstall it in place at the end of operation, otherwise water may enter the lights.
- When replacing a bulb, strictly check installation of various light components to make sure that they are installed correctly and sealed properly. When installing rear cover, check its seal ring and keep it clean! Otherwise, it will lead to water and dust entering lights!
- It is strictly forbidden to flush the engine compartment with a high pressure water gun, in particular, the lights cannot be flushed. Due to high pressure of high pressure water gun, accessories on lights may lose or fall off, vent hole and wire harness connector may damp, resulting in water infiltration or moisture not dispersing for a long time, and even severe condensation.

2-6. Seat

Correct Sitting Posture



When sitting, sit slightly inclined backwards (25° backward is ideal) and well back on seatback.

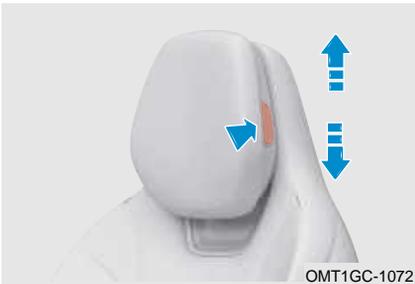
The front seats must not be too close to the instrument panel. The driver should hold the steering wheel with slightly bent arms during driving. His/her feet should also be bent slightly so that he/she can fully depress the pedal. Adjust head restraints properly so that the top of the head restraint is closest to the top of your head.



The shoulder belt should be over the center of the shoulder and close to the chest, kept away from the neck, the lap belt should lie over the hips but not stomach.

Head Restraint

Adjusting head restraint



Adjust upward: Press the outside unlock button on head restraint, then adjust the head restraint upward to a proper height.

Adjust downward: Press the outside unlock button on head restraint, then adjust the head restraint downward.

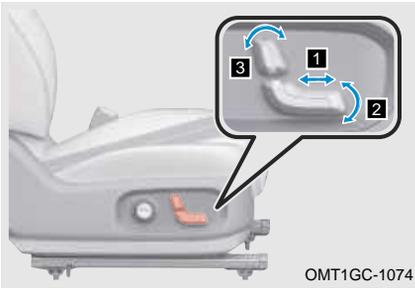
⚠ WARNING

- Do not adjust head restraint while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.
- Make sure that the head restraint is securely locked before driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

Front Seat

Driver power seat



1 Adjusting seat forward and backward

Push the button forward and backward to adjust the seat forward and backward.

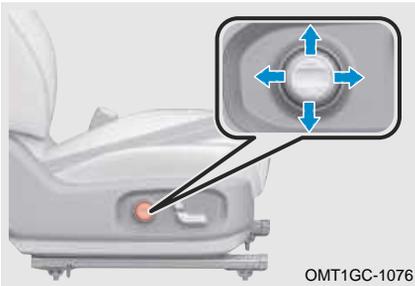
2 Adjusting seat height

Move rear end of button up and down to adjust seat height.

3 Adjusting seatback

Move upper end of button forward and backward to adjust seatback angle.

Adjusting driver waist (if equipped)



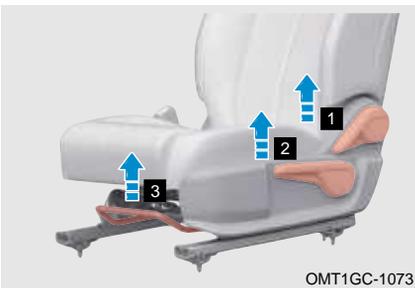
Long press "↑" to support upper part of waist and reduce support to lower part of waist.

Long press "↓" to support lower part of waist and reduce support to upper part of waist.

Long press "←" to increase support to overall forward side of waist.

Long press "→" to reduce support to overall forward side of waist.

Front passenger manual seat (if equipped)



1 Adjusting seatback angle

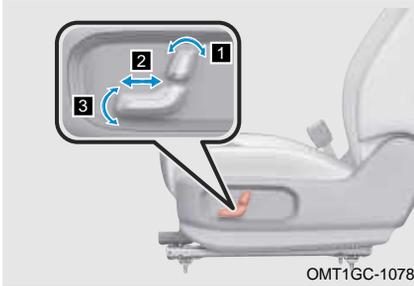
Lean your body against seatback, and then pull seatback adjustment lever upward. Adjust seatback to desired angle by changing tilt angle of your body and release the lever. After that, apply force backward against the seatback to make sure that the seatback is locked properly.

2 Adjusting seat height

Pull up and push down seat adjustment lever to adjust seat height.

3 Adjusting seat forward and backward

Pull grip up and move the seat back and forth to adjust the seat position forward and backward. After adjusting seat to a desired position, release the grip. Then, shake the seat forward and backward to make sure that the seat is locked properly.

Front passenger power seat (if equipped)**1 Adjusting seatback**

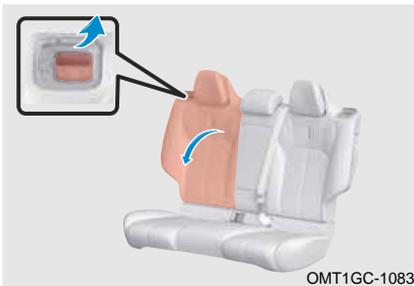
Move upper end of button forward and backward to adjust seatback angle.

2 Adjusting seat forward and backward

Push the button forward and backward to adjust the seat forward and backward.

3 Adjusting seat height

Move rear end of button up and down to adjust seat height.

Second Row Seat**Folding seatback**

Step 1: Adjust the front seat position forward;

Step 2: Adjust height of second row seat head restraints (remove them if necessary) and fold up center armrest;

Step 3: Pull seatback adjustment lever forward, and slowly lower the seatback with your hand.

READ

When folding seatback, make sure that outer seat belt passes around the seatback to avoid damaging the belt.

WARNING

Do not adjust seat while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

Seat Heating Function

Front seat heating (if equipped)



After vehicle starts, click the " ? " button on the front seat through Audio System - Seat Control Screen - Seat Heating to turn on the seat heating function and switch among level 3/level 2/level 1/OFF circularly.

READ

- Front seat heating and front seat ventilation cannot be turned on simultaneously.
- Audio main screen displays air conditioning system operation screen by sliding up audio main screen from bottom.

Seat Ventilation Function (If Equipped)



After vehicle starts, click " ? " button through Audio System - Seat Control Screen - Seat Ventilation to turn on the seat ventilation function and switch among level 3/level 2/level 1/OFF circularly.

READ

Seat heating and seat ventilation cannot be turned on simultaneously.

Driver Seat Memory Function

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, after adjusting the seat position, the audio system will pop up the seat memory screen to restore/save and update the memory position according to your needs.

Note: Seat and outside rear view mirror memory are saved and recalled at the same time.

⚠ WARNING

When seat memory function turns on, please ensure that nobody is caught. If so, move the seat adjustment button to stop operation of seats. Do not leave children alone in vehicle. Otherwise, they may be caught due to seat memory function.

Easy Seat Access/Exit Function (If Equipped)

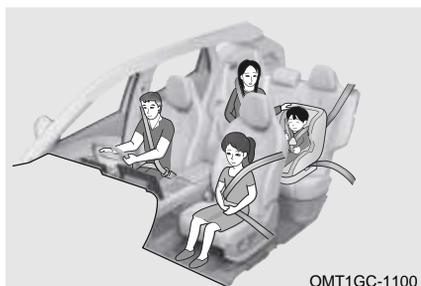
Turn vehicle power to ON mode, turn on seat easy entry/exit through Audio System - Settings - Quick Control.

Switch vehicle power from ON to OFF mode and open driver door, driver seat automatically moves backward a certain distance so that driver can get off conveniently.

Switch vehicle power from OFF to ACC/ON mode, the driver seat moves forwards a certain distance automatically for easy starting off.

⚠ WARNING

- During engine starting, the current of the vehicle is too large, and seat adjustment is not allowed. This function cannot operate properly when the vehicle power is in the OFF mode and the vehicle is started directly.
- When easy seat access/exit function turns on, please ensure that nobody is caught. If so, move the seat adjustment button to stop operation of seats. Do not leave children alone in vehicle. Otherwise, they may be caught due to easy seat access function.

2-7. Seat Belt**Seat Belt**

We strongly recommend the driver and passengers to wear their seat belts correctly at all times. Failure to do so could increase possibility and severity of injury in case of an accident. Check the seat belt regularly. If any seat belt function failure is found, please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

Seat belt indicator

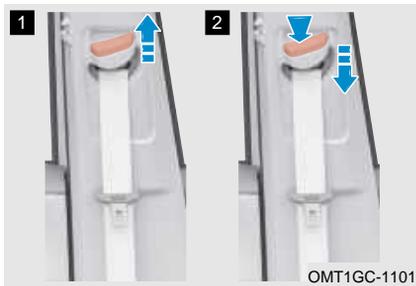
Front seat belt is not buckled or not fastened firmly: When vehicle speed is less than 13 mph (22 km/h), red indicator "  " in instrument cluster flashes; When vehicle speed is not less than 13 mph (22 km/h), red indicator "  " in instrument cluster flashes, accompanied by sound alarm.

If the rear seat belt is not buckled or fastened firmly: When vehicle speed is 13 mph (22 km/h) or more, the indicator "   " in instrument cluster flashes for a few seconds and then remains on, accompanied by sound alarm.

Note: the red indicator light turns on when the corresponding rear seat belt is not fastened, and turns off when the corresponding rear seat belt is fastened.

Using seat belt correctly

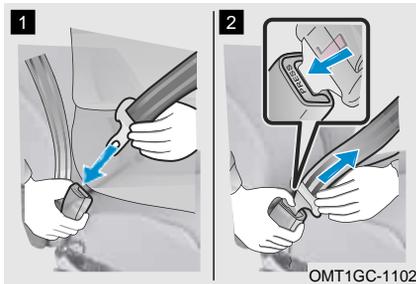
Step 1: Adjust the height of front seat belts;



1 Adjust upward: Directly push the seat belt adjustment button upwards.

2 Adjust downward: Push seat belt adjuster downward while pressing adjusting button.

Step 2: Fasten/release seat belt;



1 Fasten seat belt: Push the tab into the buckle until a "click" sound is heard.

2 Release seat belt: Press the release button to retract seat belt. If the belt cannot retract smoothly, pull it out and check for kinks or twists. Make sure that seat belt can retract smoothly.

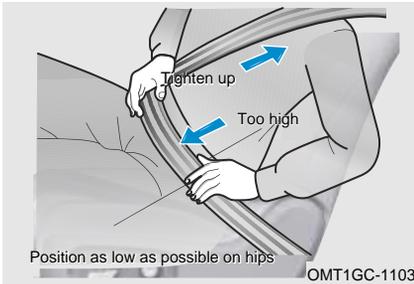
READ

- The seat belt will lock when the vehicle is on a slope.
- The seat belt will lock when it is pulled out quickly, but IT will not lock when pulling it out slowly.
- Each seat belt shall be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at one time, including children.
- Only front seat belt can perform height adjustment. The usage method of the second row seat belts is same as the front seat belt. For the specific buckle position, please refer to your own vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

- Make sure that seat belt buckle position is correct and is locked safely, otherwise it may cause personal injuries.
- Do not use any seat belt with a loose buckle, otherwise, the seat belt will not protect the passengers in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

Step 3: Adjust the position of seat belts.



To adjust the seatback angle, sit up straightly and well back in the seat. Position the lap belt as low as possible on your hips — not on your waist, then pull the shoulder belt upward so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.



Wear the seat belt after the manual seat is adjusted to the appropriate position; Take out the seat belt in time if the seat belt accidentally enters the inside of seat adjustment lever, otherwise the seat belt will be worn or damaged.

⚠ CAUTION

- Avoid loose fitting clothes when driving. These can prevent the seatbelt fitting correctly and can affect the protection offered.
- Both high-positioned lap belts and loose-fitting belts could cause death or serious injuries during a collision or other unintended events.
- Do not recline seat more than necessary to achieve a comfortable ride. Seat belts are most effective when the back of the passenger and the seat keep a complete fit.
- Make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across your shoulder. Do not place the shoulder belt under your arm. The belt should be kept away from your neck, but not falling off your shoulder. Failure to do so could reduce the protection effect of seat belt in an accident.
- We recommend that children be seated in the second row seat. Use child restraint system with ISOFIX function according to the child's height. Always use standard fixing device for child restraint system on second row seat.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

Maintaining seat belt



Check seat belts regularly for cuts, fraying, loose and stretched belt (- such as after a traffic accident). If the belt is damaged, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

CAUTION

- Do not allow water to penetrate belt retractor or buckle mechanism.
- Do not use chemical detergent, boiling water, bleach or dye to wash the seat belt.
- The seat belt should be washed with mild cleanser or warm water and dry naturally. Never clean it with artificial heat.
- Do not try to repair or lubricate retractor or buckle mechanism of seat belt, or repair seat belt in any way, it may damage the vehicle and cause personal injury.

WARNING

- If your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident and even if seat belt is not obviously damaged, please contact the authorized service station for inspection and replace.
- Ensure that the belt can function properly and the belt is not twisted. If the seat belt does not function properly, please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. If there is any need above, have any necessary service carried out by authorized service station.

Seat belt precautions

■ Precautions for using seat belt by a child

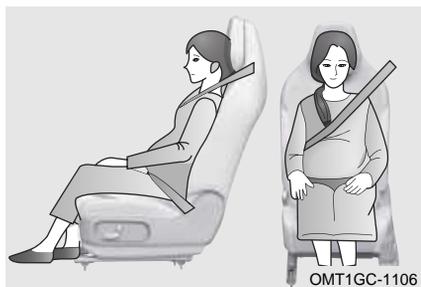
The seat belts of your vehicle are principally designed for persons of adult size. Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle seat belt. When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle seat belt, follow the instructions regarding seat belt usage. If a child is too large to use a child restraint system, the child should sit in the second row seat and must be restrained using the vehicle seat belt.



Make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from child's neck, but not falling off child's shoulder. Otherwise, the child may be seriously injured or even death during a collision or other unintended events.

Failure to use a child restraint system (for example: Let a child stand or kneel on seats; Let a child sit on an adult's laps; Holding a child in arms). This may cause death or serious injuries during a collision or other unintended events.

■ Precautions for using seat belt by a pregnant woman



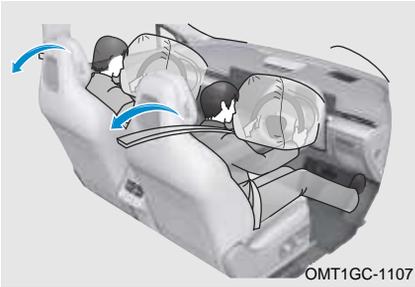
Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt properly. Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants. Extend the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and across the chest, avoid belt contact with the rounding of the abdominal area. If the seat belt is not worn properly, it may cause serious injuries or death during a collision or other unintended events.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not insert coins, clips, etc. into the buckle to prevent from properly latching tab and buckle.
- After inserting the tab, make sure that the tab and buckle are locked and that the lap belt and shoulder belt are not twisted.
- It is not allowed to insert the non-genuine seat belt tab into buckle. Long-term use will easily lead to damage of the seat belt buckle and make it unusable.
- If the seat belt does not function normally, please contact authorized service station immediately. During this period, please do not use the corresponding seat belt.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

Seat Belt Pretensioner



1. Seat belt pretensioner is designed to assist front airbag in the event of a severe impact.
2. In the event of a minor impact or side impact, pretensioner may not activate.
3. During a severe impact, seat belt pretensioner may be activated even if there is no occupant in front seat.
4. When seat belt pretensioner is activated, retractor quickly tightens seat belt to tightly restrain occupant.
5. When seat belt pretensioner is activated, it may make a working sound and release a small amount of non-toxic gas. The produced gas does not cause a fire and is generally harmless.

⚠ WARNING

- When seat belt pretensioner is activated, the airbag malfunction indicator remains on, and seat belts cannot be retracted / pulled out. Please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
- Do not modify, remove, hit or open the seat belt pretensioner assembly, airbag sensor and assembly wire. Otherwise, it may cause death or serious injuries during a collision or other unintended events.

Function limit

■ In the following cases, the seat belt pretensioner may not work properly:

1. Modify suspension system.
2. Modify front body section.
3. Repair the seat belt pretensioner or any assembly nearby.
4. Seat belt pretensioner assembly or its surrounding area is damaged.
5. Install grill guard or any other device to front body.

2-8. Child Restraint System

Child Restraint System

According to accident statistics, a child is safer sitting in the second row seat and properly restrained than child in front seat. Choose a child restraint system suitable for the vehicle, age and size of the child. (Vehicle seat belt meet international standards is designed according to body size of child over 1.5 m. If any under 1.5 m uses seat belt, the belt could hurt his/her neck seriously in case of an accident).

For installation details, strictly follow the instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

WARNING

- We suggest use standard fixing device for child restraint system on the second row seat.
- Child restraint system should comply with the safety standards set by local regulations and laws. We will take no responsibility for an accident caused by using a child restraint system.
- For effective protection in accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained using a seat belt or a appropriate child restraint system installed on the second row seat depending on age and size of the child. Holding a child in the arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system.

Child safety seat grouping

Child restraint systems should comply with local motor vehicle standards for child restraint systems and child safety prevention system (ECE R44/R129), generally, the verified child restraint system is applied a local certification label and also has an orange label after testing by ECE R44/R129 standard. There is information, such as weight group, ISOFIX level and license for child restraint system, on this label.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

CRS Table

Seat Position	Driver	Front Passenger		2 nd Row Left	2 nd Row Middle	2 nd Row Right
		Passenger Airbag ON	Passenger Airbag OFF			
Seating position suitable for universal belted (YES/NO)	N/A	NO	YES	YES	YES	YES
i-Size seating position (YES/NO)	N/A	NO	NO	YES	NO	YES
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	N/A	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	N/A	NO	NO	R1/R2X/R2/R3	NO	R1/R2X/R2/R3
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	N/A	NO	NO	F2X/F2/F3	NO	F2X/F2/F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	N/A	NO	NO	B2/B3	NO	B2/B3

Note:

1. The child seat category is defined according to ECE R16/R44/R129, you can find the category of child seat on it's specification. The child restraint system must be appropriate to the age, weight and size of the child.
2. If it is absolutely necessary for you to install a child seat to the front passenger seat, be sure to turn passenger airbag off. Adjust front passenger seat to the highest and rearmost position before installing universal CRS on it.
3. It is forbidden to install a child seat with a support base or with a support leg on the middle seat of the 2nd row.
4. Only universal belted child restraint systems can be used on the middle seat of the 2nd row.

Child restraint system precautions



This sticker is attached to front passenger sun visor and used to remind you that the vehicle is equipped with front airbag (SRS). Observe the following precautions:

- When using a rearward facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, the passenger airbag must be OFF, Refer to "- Enabling and Disabling Front Passenger Airbag".
- Never change the design of child restraint system fixing device or seat belt on the vehicle under any circumstances.
- Do not allow children to stand or sit in front of the passenger seat.

Recommended Child Restraint Systems

- Only use child restraints approved to either ECE R44 or ECE R129. Refer to the approval reference attached to the child restraint system.
- When using child restraint systems, please carefully read the instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer and strictly follow the installation instructions, to ensure the child restraint system is installed correctly.
- We recommends the following child restraint systems.

Child Height/ Mass Group	Name	Manufacturer	Type Of Fixation
40~83cm	Pearl 360& FamilyFix 360	Maxi-Cosi	ISOFIX with Support Leg
76~105cm	Pearl 360& FamilyFix 360	Maxi-Cosi	ISOFIX with Support Leg
100~150m	KidFix i-Size	Britax Römer	ISOFIX and vehicle belt
137~150m	Booster Max R129	GRACO	Vehicle belt

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

Note:

When using Britax Römer KidFix i-Size:

- Install the SICT side impact extension as per the CRS manual instruction;
- Insert the vehicle lap belt into the Secure Guard. Do not place the vehicle diagonal belt into the Secure Guard.

Top Tether



This model is equipped with top tether strap anchorages on the back of the rear seats.

Before using a top tether strap, remove the seating position head restraint and luggage compartment cover. With the child restraint on the seat, attach the top tether strap to the anchorage, and tighten to remove all slack. Refer to instructions provided by the CRS manufacturer.

READ

- Ensure all removed head restraints are stowed safely.
- After correct installation of the child restraint and top tether, the luggage compartment cover can be re-installed.

WARNING

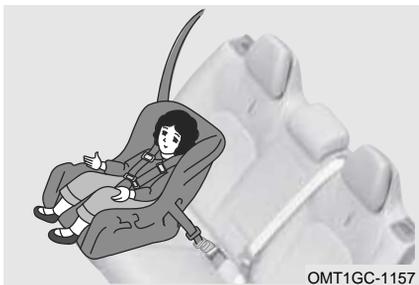
Ensure the top tether strap anchorage is attached correctly. Incorrect installation may cause serious injury to the child.

■ Rearward-facing child restraint system



A rearward facing child restraint is installed to face to the rear of the vehicle. Only install a rearward facing child restraint on the front passenger seat if the airbag is OFF. It is recommended children use a rearward facing child restraint system up to 4 years old.

■ Forward-facing child restraint system



A forward facing child restraint is installed to face to the front of the vehicle. It is recommended children use a forward facing child restraint system when older than 4 years old.

■ Booster seat child restraint system



For larger children that cannot fit in a child restraint system with a high back, they may occupy a second row outboard seat using a booster seat, either attached to the lower anchorage points or belted, as described in the instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Installing Child Restraint Systems

ISOFIX anchorage



ISOFIX anchorage is located below the back of rear outside seatback. When connecting child restraint system to ISOFIX anchorage, follow the instruction manual provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

Install the ISOFIX/i-Size child restraint system



Step 1: Locate the ISOFIX anchorage;

Step 2: Lift the curtain up and tuck it into the seat gap to expose the ISOFIX fixing point;



Step 3: Place the child restraint system on the rear outboard seat;

Step 4: Attach the child restraint ISOFIX probe to the anchorage. Where necessary extend the child restraint support leg.



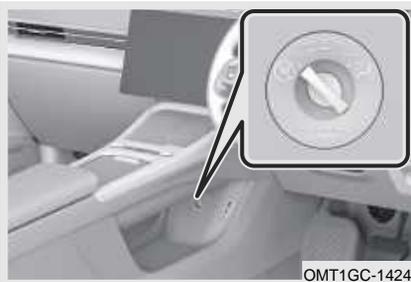
Step 5: If the instruction manual for the child restraint system requires the use of top tether, Pass the upper fixing belt of the child restraint system the seat head restraint and connect it with the hook in the top tether anchorage of the rear seat.

READ

- If it interferes with the installation, the head restraint can be removed from the seat the child restraint system is installed on.
- For the specific method of fixing the child restraint system, strictly follow the instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

⚠ WARNING

- After installing child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- It is recommended child restraint systems are installed on the rear outboard seats.
- Never fix more than one child restraint system to one set of anchor points.
- If anchor point device is damaged or overloaded during an accident, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
- If the driver's seat interferes with the correct installation of the child restraint system on the rear seat behind the driver seat, install the child restraint system on the rear seat behind the front passenger.
- If the driver's seat interferes with the correct installation of the child restraint system, install the child restraint system on the second row right side seat.
- Do not use child restraint system anchor bracket to secure items other than child restraint system. we will not be liable for any accident caused this way.
- If the child restraint system is not correctly fixed in place, the child or passengers may face serious injury or even death during a collision.
- If the child restraint system on the rear seat interferes with the front seat, after all correct adjustments, do not install the child restraint system in that seat position; The child and front passenger may face serious injury or even death during a collision.
- Whether the child restraint system is in use or not in use, it should always be secure and fixed properly to the seat; Do not place unsecure child restraint systems on any passenger seats.

Enabling and disabling front passenger airbag

Airbag enabling/disabling switch is located below the auxiliary fascia console.

■ Disabling front passenger airbag

Turn the switch to OFF position while pulling the switch outward, the front passenger airbag is disabled and the disabling status indicator will come on.

■ Enabling front passenger airbag

Turn the switch from OFF to ON, re-enable the front passenger airbag and the enabling status indicator will come on. It is now safe to sit in the front passenger seat.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

Airbag status indicator



- 1** Disabling status indication
- 2** Enabling status indication

WARNING

- When an adult is in the passenger seat, it is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the passenger air bag is activated;
- When a child is in the passenger seat, it is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the passenger air bag is turned off;
- If the front passenger airbag remains activated after it has been turned off (and vice versa), contact your local service immediately.

Reminder for Children Staying in Rear Seat

Introduction

This function is based on the active detection of millimeter wave radar .After the vehicle is powered off and locked, it detects whether there is a child in the car. If there is child, the system alarms to alert customers and pedestrians around the vehicle. The alarm is alerted by a double flash and a siren.

After locking the car, the system will immediately begin to determine whether there is a child in the car. If a child is detected, an initial alert will be sent ten seconds after locking the car, and the whole process will last five seconds or until canceled.

After the end of the initial reminder, if the door is still closed and the system detects that there are still children in the car, the upgrade reminder will be activated at 85 seconds after the end of the initial reminder; The upgrade reminder signal takes every 60 seconds as a reminder cycle. Within a cycle, the signal of yellow double flashing light and siren lasts for 30 seconds, and then pauses for 30 seconds in this cycle. Repeat until the reminder is cancelled

When the first upgrade reminder is triggered for more than 5 minutes and a child is detected in the car, a three-level reminder will be triggered.

Temporary system suspension

The system allows temporary suspension. In Settings > Vehicle Settings > Safety on the vehicle infotainment system, there is a temporary off switch for this feature. Turn off the reminding function once through this switch when

there is no need to remind temporarily. However, when the vehicle starts and drives next time, the switch will return to "ON" state by default.

 **WARNING**

Please do not leave children alone in the car.

3-1. Key Information	Audio Button.....	100
Smart Key	Voice Recognition	
Effective Range	Function	100
Keyless Entry	Phone-link.....	100
Vehicle Arming.....		
Immobilizer System	3-6. Air Conditioning System	
Smart Key Vehicle	Front A/C	103
Locating.....	A/C Setting.....	104
Remote Starting for	Air Conditioning	
Smart Key	Operation.....	104
	Air Conditioning Heating....	107
3-2. Doors	A/C Cooling.....	108
Door Unlocking/Locking	Intelligent Mode (If	
Door Mechanical Switch.....	Equipped)	110
Child Lock	Refrigeration/Warming	
	Function of Armrest Box....	110
3-3. Windows	Air Outlets Airflow	
Power Windows	Control	111
Window Remote Control		
Function	3-7. Fragrance System	
Window Jam Protection	Fragrance System (If	
Function (If Equipped).....	Equipped)	111
	Replacing fragrance	111
3-4. Panoramic Moon Roof		
Panoramic Moon Roof (If	3-8. Driving Recorder	
Equipped)	Driving Recorder (If	
Moon Roof Remote	Equipped)	112
Control Function	Setting.....	115
Moon Roof Jam		
Protection Function	3-9. Wireless Charging	
	Wireless Charging	
3-5. Audio System	(CWC) (If Equipped)	115
Audio View		
Control Center	3-10. Remote Control System	
Setting.....	Remote Control System	
Sliding Screen (If	(If Equipped).....	119
Equipped)	Introduction of Product	
	Functions.....	119

INTERIOR FUNCTION

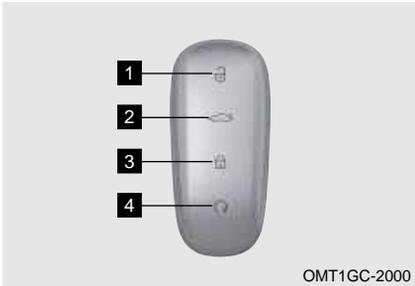
3-11.Storage Space		3-15.Front Compartment Cover	
Storage Space.....	121	Opening/Closing Front	
3-12.USB Port		Compartment Cover	126
Front USB.....	124	3-16.Back Door	
Rear USB	124	Manual Back Door (If	
3-13.Backup Power Supply (12 V)		Equipped)	126
Front Backup Power		Power Back Door (If	
Supply.....	125	Equipped)	127
Rear Backup Power		Back Door Emergency	
Supply (If equipped)	125	Opening.....	131
3-14.Sun Visors and Vanity		3-17.Fuel Tank Cap	
Mirrors		Electric Fuel Tank Cap	131
Sun Visors and Vanity			
Mirrors.....	125		

3-1. Key Information

Smart Key

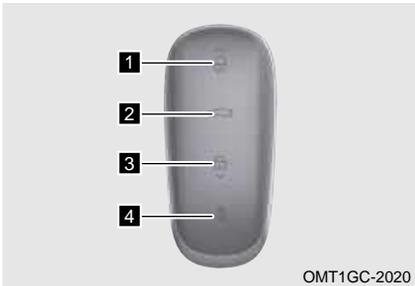
Smart key is used to remotely lock/unlock doors and open back door within about 20 m (no blind spot and magnetic interference) of the vehicle (varies depending on the configuration of vehicle models).

Type A



- 1 Unlock button
- 2 Back door opener button
- 3 Lock button
- 4 Remote starting button

Type B



- 1 Unlock button
- 2 Back door opener button
- 3 Lock button
- 4 Remote Parking Button

Function limit

If any of the following conditions occurs, the smart key battery may be low or depleted:

1. The remote control distance gradually decreases.
2. Remote control function does not work even there is no interference.
3. Instrument cluster prompts "Smart key battery is low".

■ In the following conditions, the smart key may not work properly:

1. There are more than one smart keys being used nearby.
2. The distance between vehicle and smart key is over 20 m.
3. The smart key is in contact with, or is covered by a metallic object.
4. The smart key is placed near an electrical appliance (such as mobile phone or personal computer).

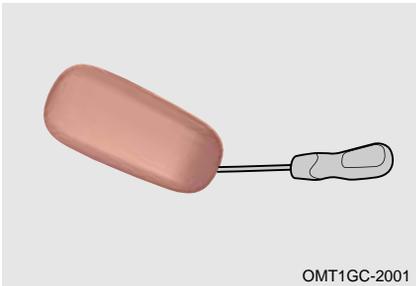
3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

5. The key is near wireless communication devices that have the similar frequency with the remote control key (such as portable radio).
6. The key is near facilities that generate strong radio waves (such as TV tower, radio station, power station, airport, train station).

CAUTION

- This product is a low frequency radio device and can be interfered by various radio services or radiation from industrial, scientific and medical equipment.
- Do not change the transmitting frequency, increase the transmitter power (including installation of the wireless RF power amplifier), or install an external or other transmitting antenna without permission.
- In the process of normal use of the vehicle, do not place the smart key on the wireless charging tray, so that vehicle may identify the smart key.
- When using the product, do not interfere with legal wireless communications; In case of interference, immediately stop using and take measures to eliminate the interference before continuing to use it.

Replacing smart key battery



Step 1: Pry off smart key cover using a flathead screwdriver with the tip taped and take out mechanical key;

Step 2: Pry off battery in smart key using a flathead screwdriver with the tip taped and install new battery with the positive (+) side up;

Step 3: Install smart key in place in the reverse order of removal;

Step 4: After replacing the battery, check if the smart key operates properly. If the smart key still does not function correctly, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Used lithium battery cannot be handled as general household rubbish, please handle used battery according to the local regulations and provisions regarding environmental protection.

 READ

- Make sure that positive and negative terminals of battery are placed correctly.
- Smart key battery model: 3V-CR2032 lithium battery.

 CAUTION

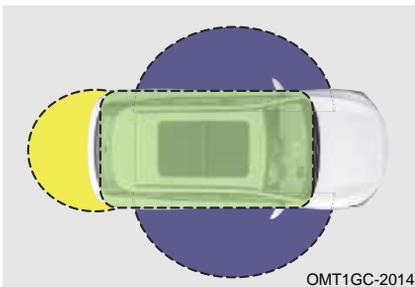
- Only use the battery model recommended.
- Do not bend electrode and terminal when installing battery.
- Make sure your hands are dry and keep away from water when replacing the battery.
- Do not touch new battery with oily hand. Failure to do so may cause battery corrosion.
- Do not touch or move any components inside the smart key, or its functions may not work properly.
- There are some difficulties when replacing battery, so it may be damaged if replacing the battery by yourself. It is recommended to replace it at authorized service station.

 WARNING

Take special care to prevent children from swallowing the removed battery or other components, failure to do so may cause death or serious injury to the child.

Effective Range

Detectable area

 Starting or switching power area

Start or switch power mode when smart key is inside the vehicle.

 Unlocking/locking area

Unlock/lock the doors when smart key is within effective range of high performance low-frequency antenna of door.

 Opening back door area

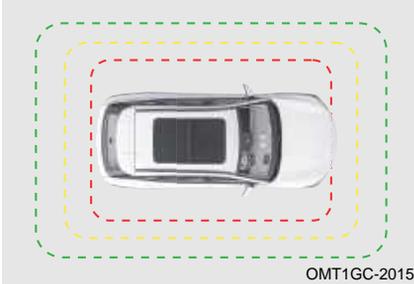
Open the back door when smart key is within effective range of luggage compartment outside low-frequency antenna.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

READ

Low-frequency antenna can detect areas within 1.5 m away from smart key. Therefore, when using keyless entry or one-button start function, ensure that distance between smart key and low-frequency antenna meets the requirement.

Automatic sensing area



Smart welcome lights ON area

Approach the vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, the welcome lights will turn on.

Away from locking area

Leave the vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, the doors will lock automatically.

Approaching to unlocking area

Approach the vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, the doors will unlock automatically.

READ

- Please leave the vehicle after the four doors, hood and back door are closed, otherwise, the automatic sensing lock function may not work properly.
- Functions such as keyless entry, welcome function, approach unlocking, away locking etc. may be affected due to the interference of surrounding environment while carrying smart key on your person. When the functions are abnormal, please change to other methods (such as manual unlocking, remote unlocking) to unlock/lock or start the vehicle.

Function limit

■ Smart key may not be detected in the following conditions:

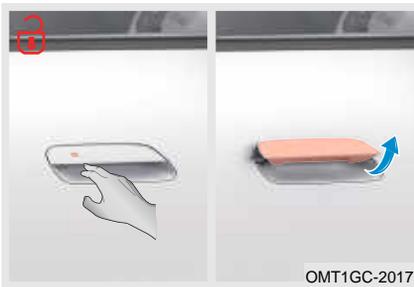
1. Smart key is in luggage compartment.
2. When locking doors, smart key is too close to the window or roof.
3. Check if the smart key is placed together with strong electromagnetic interference sources (such as portable power source, interphone or other phones).

Keyless Entry



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and turn on Near to unlock, far to lock through Audio System - Settings - Quick Control.

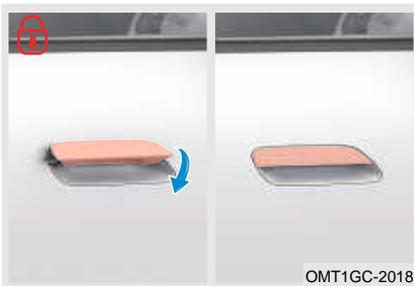
Unlocking doors



Method 1: Touch the door handle sensing area while carrying smart key on your person, system automatically recognizes the validity of smart key and doors are unlocked automatically.

Method 2: Approach the vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, welcome lights turn on, system automatically recognizes the validity of smart key and doors unlock automatically.

Locking doors



Method 1: Touch the door handle sensing area while carrying smart key on your person, system automatically recognizes the validity of smart key and doors are locked automatically.

Method 2: Leave vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, system automatically recognizes the validity of smart key and doors lock automatically.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

READ

- Approach unlocking/away locking function will be turned off after 3 days since vehicle is locked. Restarting the vehicle will resume the approach unlocking/away locking function.
- When using the vehicle in winter, if the door handle is frozen and cannot be extended, use a card to remove the ice layer between the handle and the sheet metal gap, at the same time, you can use the bottom of your fist to tap the door handle slightly, and increase the hitting strength as needed until the ice is completely removed. Once the door handle can be extended, open and close the door several times. Make sure that the door handle returns to its original position before entering the vehicle. Never hit the vehicle with excessive force to avoid dents, and hit the handle gently.

CAUTION

- Do not put smart key next to computer, cordless mouse, phone, etc., otherwise, failing to sense lock/unlock may be caused.
- Sensing lock function can be operated only when vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, four doors, hood and back door are closed and smart key is not stored in vehicle.
- After leaving the vehicle and closing four doors, hood and back door, if smart key is left in vehicle or there is no smart key around vehicle within approximately 2.5 m, smart key sensing active lock function will not be activated.
- If smart key is brought outside the range of approximately 2.5 m of the vehicle and turn signal lights do not flash and horn does not sound (-successful arming prompt), inspect if the vehicle is locked to avoid locking failure caused by misoperation or unsatisfied condition.
- After sensing unlocking/locking function is activated, if smart key keeps near the vehicle for more than 3 minutes, the vehicle will lock automatically, if the key still does not leave after another 3 minutes, for the purpose of power saving, smart key sensing function will be temporarily turned off and can be activated only after opening any door, front compartment cover or back door and then closing four doors, hood and back door.

Vehicle Arming

Arming operation



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and set Arming reminder (Light/Lights and Speakers) through Audio System - Settings - Vehicle Settings.



■ Arming mode

Perform door locking operation with vehicle power switched to OFF mode, four doors, hood and back door closed, vehicle will enter arming mode.

Successful arming prompt: Turn signal lights flash once and anti-theft horn sounds once.

Arming failure prompt: Turn signal lights flash twice and anti-theft horn does not sound.

■ Secondary arming mode

After disarming, if four doors, hood and back door are not operated, the vehicle will be locked automatically and enter arming mode after 30 seconds. If any of the four doors, hood and back door is opened, the vehicle will exit secondary arming mode.

READ

- Vehicle arming cannot be set if vehicle power is not switched to OFF mode.
- If four doors are closed and hood and back door are not completely closed, the central lock locks once and vehicle anti-theft system is not armed successfully.
- If hood and back door are closed and any door is not closed, the central lock will lock and then unlock, and vehicle anti-theft system is not armed successfully.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

Disarming operation



With vehicle in arming mode, perform vehicle unlocking operation and vehicle exits arming mode.

Successful disarming prompt: Turn signal lights flash twice.

Immobilizer System

Electronic immobilizer system

Smart key has a built-in transponder chip. If the smart key is not pre-matched into electronic immobilizer module, the built-in chip will prevent vehicle from starting.

■ In the following conditions, electronic immobilizer system may not work properly:

1. Smart key is in contact with a metallic object.
2. Modify or remove electronic immobilizer system.
3. Smart key is too close to or contacts smart key (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not match the smart key by yourself, otherwise the electronic immobilizer system may not work properly.

Vehicle anti-theft system

With vehicle in arming mode and illegal entry is detected, the vehicle anti-theft system will send sound-light alarm, alerting owner that the vehicle is in an illegal opening state.

 READ

- The vehicle anti-theft system will not be enabled if the doors are locked by mechanical key. It is recommended to lock doors by smart key.
- After locking doors with smart key, the vehicle anti-theft system will be triggered if front right door is unlocked and opened by mechanical key.
- When vehicle anti-theft system is triggered, vehicle anti-theft system can be deactivated by pressing unlock button on smart key or switching if the vehicle power to ON mode.
- Before leaving the vehicle, check that nobody is in vehicle, all doors and windows are closed properly and vehicle is armed successfully to prevent unexpected triggering of vehicle anti-theft system or vehicle theft.

Smart Key Vehicle Locating

Press lock button on smart key twice continuously within several seconds, horn sounds 6 times, at the same time, turn signal lights flash 10 times, this allows you to find your vehicle easily.

Remote Starting for Smart Key

When vehicle is in arming mode and smart key is not in vehicle, long press lock button or remote starting button on the smart key for several seconds to start it remotely and A/C operates automatically at the same time. The vehicle will automatically shut off after 10 minutes of remote starting.

 READ

- There must be no person in the vehicle including the operator when starting the vehicle remotely.
- Distance when starting vehicle remotely using smart key should not exceed normal operating distance of smart key (20 m).
- After vehicle is started remotely, some functions cannot be operated (such as headlight switch, wiper switch, audio function), depress brake pedal while carrying smart key on your person, exit remote mode to restore normal operation.
- During 10 minutes of single remote starting, if lock button or remote starting button is pressed again, the time will add 10 minutes; it allows vehicle to remotely start twice, if the two starting chances has been used up, turn the vehicle power to ON mode, and then perform remote starting again.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

3-2. Doors

Door Unlocking/Locking

Independent driver door unlocking



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, turn on Unlock driver door only through Audio System - Settings - Vehicle Settings.

Only the driver door is unlocked when smart key unlock button is pressed for the first time. Other three doors are unlocked when smart key unlock button is pressed for the second time.

Automatic locking



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, turn on Automatic lock through Audio System - Settings - Vehicle Settings; Doors are automatically locked when the four doors, hood and back door are closed and vehicle speed is more than 9 mhp (15 km/h).

Unlocking/locking doors



Press “” button to unlock/lock doors.



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, click "🔒" button through Audio System - Settings - Quick Control to unlock/lock doors.

Manual door unlocking



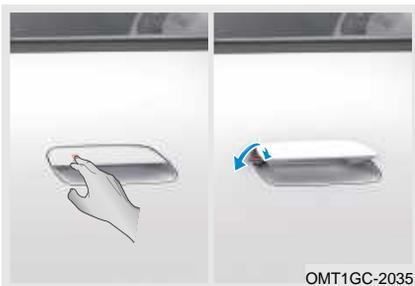
With vehicle in unlocked state, pull door inside handle directly to open doors.

With vehicle in locked state, pull door inside handle for the first time to unlock the doors, and pull it again to open the doors.

Door Mechanical Switch

Vehicle cannot be unlocked/locked electrically when battery is depleted or under similar conditions. In this case, the doors can be unlocked/locked with door mechanical switch.

Locking/unlocking front right door manually



Pull the door handle, and insert the mechanical key into the key hole in the door outside handle, and rotate clockwise to lock the driver door and rotate counterclockwise to unlock the driver door.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

Locking front left door/second row doors



Open the door, insert the mechanical key into the lock cylinder, and move the lock button downwards to lock the door.

READ

- If the doors can not be unlocked/locked electrically, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When using door mechanical switch, please check if the doors are locked successfully one by one after locking. If unsuccessful, please contact authorized service station as soon as possible.

Child Lock

Manual child lock



The child lock is located on inside of second row doors.

Lock: Use mechanical key to turn in the direction of arrow to lock the child lock.

Unlock: Use mechanical key to turn in the opposite direction of arrow to unlock the child lock.

WARNING

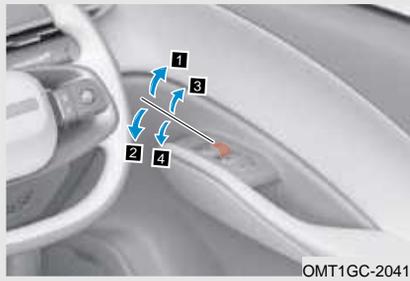
- The child lock is independent and cannot replace the central lock mechanism in any case.
- When a child is seated on the second row seats, always lock child locks to prevent the second row doors being opened accidentally while driving.
- After child lock is locked, in the event of a collision or other accident, if there is someone trapped inside vehicle and the second row door cannot be opened from the inside, please open it from outside the vehicle.
- In hot weather, if vehicle stalls and all doors and windows close, do not allow any animal or child in vehicle alone. Otherwise, serious injury or even death may be caused by the sharp temperature rise even if it is a short time.

3-3. Windows

Power Windows

There are many ways to open/close windows, such as by window switch, voice recognition and remote control.

Switch control



Automatic mode

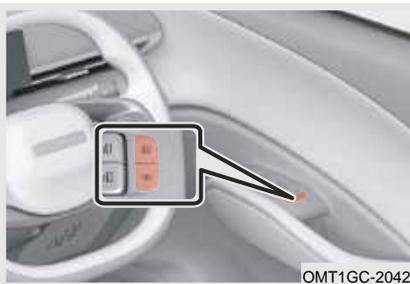
- 1 Pull the switch to top to make window go up automatically; press it again to stop moving the window.
- 2 Press the switch to bottom to make window go down automatically; press it again to stop moving the window.

Jog mode

- 3 Pull the switch upwards by one level to make window go up; release the switch to stop moving the window.
- 4 Press the switch downwards by one level to make window go down; release the switch to stop moving the window.

Passenger side window OFF function

When there is child in vehicle, it is recommended to turn on the passenger side window OFF function. After turning on this function, the passenger side window can only be operated through the driver side window switch.



Press "  " switch to turn on/off the passenger side window OFF function.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, click "☰" button through Audio System - Setting - Quick Control to turn on/off passenger side window OFF function.

READ

- For details about voice recognition function, refer to "Audio System" section.
- Vehicles with window jam protection function have one-touch window up function.
- If front right / left door (exclude rear doors) is not opened within 2 minutes after vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, the power window can be operated.
- After leaving vehicle in low temperature environment for a long time, when operating power window switch, window glass cannot be fully opened or closed. In this case, release the switch and then operate it again, repeat this operation 3 - 5 cycles to resume.

WARNING

- Do not leave children alone in vehicle. If accidental operation of window switch is made, children may be caught by the rising window.
- When vehicle is driving or before closing the window, make sure that all parts of passenger' s body (such as hands) are in the vehicle, otherwise, personal injury may be caused.
- To avoid personal injury, it is driver' s responsibility to guide all passengers to operate power window up/down switch and especially to prevent children from using it incorrectly. Ensure that vehicle power has been switched to OFF mode or non-mechanical device is closed when leaving the vehicle.
- Take extra care when closing windows, failure to do so may cause serious jamming and injury! For models with window jam protection function, jam protection function can be activated in jam protection area to protect passenger. However, for the thin or soft objects, jam protection function may not be activated, resulting in serious injury.

Window Remote Control Function

Remote control window down function

While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, four doors are closed and unlock button on smart key is pressed and hold, windows of four doors will go down automatically. If unlock button on smart key is released or any door is opened in this process, window will stop going down.

Remote control window up function

While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, four doors are closed, lock button on smart key is pressed, the vehicle will enter arming status and four door window will go up automatically. Unlock/lock doors in automatic window up process and windows will stop going down.

READ

If abnormal closing occurs during remote control one-touch window up, turn signal lights flash 1 time and horn continuously sounds 5 times to alarm you that window may not close normally.

WARNING

Before using remote control up window function, please take extra care. Remote control up/down window function can be used only when the vehicle can be seen clearly and make sure that passengers cannot be caught by window.

Window Jam Protection Function (If Equipped)

Jam protection function

During one-touch window up or remote control one-touch window up, if obstacle is encountered in jam protection area and resistance exceeds a certain value, window will stop rising and go down slightly. To close window, move away obstacle and operate again.

To protect the window regulation system, window jam protection function and one-touch window up function will be canceled in some conditions to avoid potential safety hazard. At this time, the window only has the conventional up-down function. After jam protection learning, the one-touch window up function of corresponding door will return to normal.

Canceling jam protection function

If obstacle is encountered twice continuously when rising the window, the window will stop rising, jam protection function will be canceled. If the battery cable is disconnected during working or non-working process, jam protection function will be canceled.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

Overheat protection function

To protect motor, if window up-down operation is performed continuously, overheat protection function actively disables the control of corresponding window switch. After motor temperature returns to normal, it recovers. This function will not affect the use of other normal window up-down functions.

Manual learning function

If one-touch window up function and jam protection function do not operate, perform the following steps to resume function. Make sure that there are no obstacles within window range during learning.

Step 1: Turn vehicle power to ON mode;

Step 2: Manually and continuously operate window switch to fully close the window and hold at that position for 2 seconds, and then release the switch;

Step 3: Manually and continuously operate window switch to fully open the window and hold at that position for 2 seconds, and then release the switch;

Step 4: Try to operate automatic window up function;

Step 5: If window cannot be closed automatically, please repeat the above steps to set.

If automatic window up function cannot resume after repeating the above steps, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Note: If window memory position is lost, it can also be set with remote control one-touch window up function. At this time, window will go down to bottom, then go up to top. Window can be closed normally while setting is successful.

READ

When driving over roads with potholes or uneven surfaces, gravity may affect door system unexpectedly. In this case, window may reverse and go down while rising by one-touch window up function. This is a small probability event and normal.

CAUTION

- If battery cable is disconnected and reconnected, automatic window up function and jam protection function will not work.
- Jam protection function is a kind of window safety protection function. Never try to active it repeatedly using various objects, in improper methods or even by intentionally pinching any part of your body. Failure to do so may cause damage to window regulation system mechanism or accidental personal injury.
- When closing window, always keep the window close area clear even if it is equipped with jam protection function, otherwise, if there is a thin object and system cannot sense it, jam protection will not work. If someone's hand or finger is caught, extremely serious injury may be caused.

3-4. Panoramic Moon Roof

Panoramic Moon Roof (If Equipped)

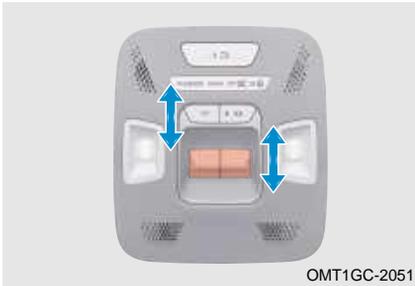
There are many ways to open/close moon roof, such as by moon roof switch, voice recognition.

Quick control



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, click "☰" button through Audio System - Settings - Quick Control to turn on/off moon roof.

Switch control



Opening/closing sunshade

Push "☰" switch backward when sunshade is closed, sunshade will slide to middle position. Push "☰" switch again, sunshade will slide to fully open position.

Push "☰" switch forward when sunshade is fully open, sunshade will slide to middle position. Push "☰" switch again, sunshade will slide to fully close position.

Tilting up/closing moon roof

Push "☰" switch backward when moon roof is closed, the moon roof will tilt up.

Push "☰" switch forward when the moon roof is tilted up to close moon roof; Or directly push the "☰" switch forward, the moon roof will automatically close first, and then the sunshade will close.

Opening/closing moon roof

With moon roof tilted up, push "☰" switch backward to slide and open the moon roof. Push "☰" switch again to slide and open the moon roof to the maximum position.

Push "☰" switch forward when the moon roof is opening to close moon roof; Or directly push the "☰" switch forward, the moon roof will automatically close first, and then the sunshade will close.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

READ

- For details about voice recognition function, refer to "Audio System" section.
- If you find there is a false jam protection, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Moon roof switch and sunshade switch are designed in 2 levels; first level is manual control opening range; second level is automatic control opening range, please select a proper level according to your demands.

CAUTION

- Failure in moon roof jam protection function may cause initial memory position to be lost, therefore, it is necessary to recalibrate the position.
- When moon roof is frozen or covered with snow, forcibly opening moon roof will damage the moon roof glass and motor.
- If there is water on moon roof after raining, always drain it off before opening, to prevent water from flowing into cab.
- Regularly clean the dust and debris in moon roof rails and strips with water; after vehicle washing or raining, completely wipe the water on the moon roof glass before use.

WARNING

- Do not leave children alone in vehicle. If accidental operation of moon roof switch is made, their heads or hands may be hurt.
- When vehicle is driving or before closing the moon roof, make sure that all parts of passenger' s body (such as hands) are in the vehicle, otherwise, personal injury may be caused.

Moon Roof Remote Control Function

Moon roof remote open function

While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode and four doors are closed, press and hold unlock button on smart key for a few seconds, sunshade is opened and then moon roof is opened; press the lock button during opening of moon roof, the moon roof stops moving.

Moon roof remote close function

While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode and four doors are closed, press lock button on smart key, and vehicle enters arming mode. Moon roof closes automatically first, then the sunshade closes; Press the lock button, the moon roof complete the current operation.

⚠ WARNING

Before using moon roof remote close function, please take extra care. Moon roof remote close function can be used only when the vehicle can be seen clearly and make sure that passengers cannot be caught by moon roof.

Moon Roof Jam Protection Function**Jam protection function**

When the moon roof movable glass (sunshade) encounters an obstacle in jam protection area and resistance exceeds a certain value during one-touch closed, it will stop, and the moon roof (sunshade) will rebound.

Manual learning function

If the moon roof unable to moved to closed position with one-button, unable to fully open with one-button, moon roof tilting up after closing, moon roof glass unable to open or close normally, sunshade unable to open or close, etc. Please follow the operation instructions below to reset.

Step 1: Turn vehicle power to ON mode, operate the moon roof/sunshade to the fully open and closed position; Long press the moon roof/sunshade close button manually until you hear a clicking sound from the moon roof/sunshade motor (moon roof glass/sunshade will move back and forth slightly), stop the long press action and try to one-button open/close again.

Note: It effective until after the moon roof reaches the closed position. If there is no response or if it triggers a rebound when closing, proceed to step 2.

Step 2: Press the moon roof/sunshade automatic opening button and release it, during the process of moon roof/sunshade automatic opening, long press the moon roof/sunshade close button; Observe the movement of moon roof/sunshade from paused to closed position, keep pressing the close button until you hear a "click" sound of the reset of the moon roof/sunshade motor (the moon roof glass/sunshade will move back and forth slightly).

Note: Be sure to release the button during the automatic opening process of moon roof/sunshade before pressing the close button.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

CAUTION

- If the problem cannot be solved by repeating the above operation, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- If the battery cable is disconnected and reconnected, there may be a loss of moon roof initialization, resulting in the moon roof being unable to open or close.
- When closing the moon roof, always keep the moon roof closing area clear even if it is equipped with jam protection function. Otherwise, the jam protection will not work when the moon roof encountering thin objects. If passenger's hand or finger is caught, serious injury may be caused.
- Jam protection function is a kind of passengers protection function. Never try to activate it by repeatedly using various objects, improper methods or even with some part of body. Failure to do so may damage moon roof function or cause accidental personal injury.

3-5. Audio System

Audio View



OMT18-2060

- | | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>1 Multimedia
Click to enter multimedia screen.</p> | <p>2 Telephone
Click to enter telephone or Bluetooth phone setting screen.</p> | <p>3 Seat control (If Equipped)
Click to enter seat control screen.</p> |
| <p>4 Card type interactive screen
Swipe to view, click on the card to enter the corresponding APP, long press the card to customize.</p> | <p>5 Front passenger temperature adjustment
Click or slide left and right to adjust the air conditioning temperature for front passenger.</p> | <p>6 Click to pop up the air conditioning system operation screen.</p> |
| <p>7 Driver temperature adjustment
Click or slide left and right to adjust the air conditioning temperature for driver.</p> | <p>8 Seat control (If Equipped)
Click to enter seat control screen.</p> | <p>9 Application
Click to enter APP application.</p> |

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

10 Home page

Click to return to home page.

Note: Long press "☆" and "☰" buttons for 10 seconds to restart the audio system.

READ

- Some models of radio support RDS / DAB function.

Control Center



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, the control center screen can be displayed by sliding the screen down in the audio screen.

The drive mode, display off, Auto Hold, Rear Mirror Adjustment, ESP OFF, HDC, screen cleaning, hotspot, Ambient Lighting, AVM, Wiper Sensitivity, Rearview Mirror Folding, Turn off screen etc. can be set on the Control center screen.

Setting

Quick control



Central locking: Click "🔒" button to unlock/lock doors.

Rear door: Click "🚪" button to open/close the back door.

Rearview Mirror Folding: Click "🪞" button to fold/expand rear view mirror.

Vehicle window lock: Click "🚗" button to turn on/off passenger side window OFF function. After that, passenger side windows only can be operated by driver side window switch (this function is recommended when there is a child in vehicle).

Sunroof: Click "☀️" button to turn on/off sunroof.

Smart Key: Set approach unlocking and away locking.

Rear view mirror: Set the rear view mirror adjustment, outside rear view mirror automatic folding and rear view mirror automatic adjustment at reversing.

More: Set the steering wheel button customization and easy seat access/exit.

Lighting



OMT1GC-2063

Turn on/off Ambient Light, set Custom, Linked driving mode, Musical rhythm and brightness.

Light setting: Set approach welcome, headlight delay and intelligent high beam assist.

Headlight leveling adjusting: Set the headlight leveling adjusting (level 0/ level 1/level 2/level 3).

Driving



OMT1GC-2064

Drive mode: Set Drive mode (ECO/ Normal/Sport) and Drive mode memory.

Driver assistance



OMT1GC-2065

Driver Assistance: Set Intelligent Cruise Assist Exit Warning and Intelligent avoidance system.

Active Safety: Set Forward Collision Warning System, Automatic emergency braking, Rear cross traffic assist, Rear collision warning, Lane assist system, Emergency lane keeping assist, Speed limit assistance (speed limit reminder/ over speed alarm), Intelligent speed control, Blind spot detection and Door open warning.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

Vehicle settings



Rear tailgate opening on height: Slide to adjust the back door opening height.

Wiper Sensitivity: Set the Wiper Sensitivity (Low/Standard/High/Maximum).

Door Lock: Set Arming reminder, Automatic lock and Main driver unlocked alone.

Maintenance: Set maintenance prompt and maintenance mileage reset.

Chassis: Set steering power mode.

Display



Set the Wallpaper and Screen protection.

Brightness mode: Set the Brightness mode (Day/Night/Auto).

Brightness: Set and adjust the brightness of Central control screen and Dash board.

More: Set video restriction, screen cleaning and default setting restoring.

Connection



Set Bluetooth, hotspot and Wireless Charging.

Sound



Set the Advance EQ, Sound adjustment, loudness and headrest speaker.

Volume: Set the volume for navigation, voice, media and phone, etc.

More: Set vehicle speed volume, alarm sound type, button tone, incoming broadcast and default setting restoring.

System



About: Version information, Device name, Storage and Reset.

Privacy: Permission management and privacy policy details.

General: Hand guided navigation, Language, Time Setting, Meter fuel consumption unit, Tyre pressures unit switching and user feedback.

READ

The setting items are different depending on the software versions. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

Sliding Screen (If Equipped)

During vehicle use or driving, the driver and passengers can move the screen through voice, button or large screen operation. The screen can be moved from the middle position to the front passenger position or from the front passenger position to the middle position when specific conditions are met.



OMT1GC-1034

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, click " " button on the control center to move the sliding screen.



OMT1GC-4031

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, long press "☆" button to move the sliding screen.



OMT1GC-1037

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, slide your four fingers to the left or right on the screen to move the sliding screen.

 CAUTION

- No miscellaneous items are allowed to be placed on the surface of the large screen. If an object accidentally falls into the gap between the screen and the center console during the sliding process, it must be removed first before continuing the operation to prevent the object from getting stuck on the guide rail.
- When sliding the large screen, do not forcibly pull, press the edge of the screen or change the sliding direction to avoid damaging the screen sliding mechanism.
- When the large screen slides to the limit position on the front passenger side or the driver side, the operation must be stopped at this time. It is strictly forbidden to forcibly push the screen to try to break through the limit, to prevent the guide rail from deforming or the motor from being overloaded and burned out.
- Avoid operating the large screen sliding on bumpy roads (such as sandy and gravel roads, potholes), during car washing, or when the windows are open on rainy days to prevent dust and rainwater from entering the sliding mechanism, which may cause rusting or short circuits of components.
- In case of any abnormality such as lagging when sliding the large screen, abnormal noise, inability to move or automatic retraction after displacement, stop the operation immediately and contact the authorized service center for inspection and repair. Do not disassemble the screen or sliding mechanism by yourself to avoid damaging the equipment warranty terms or causing the fault to expand.
- When the vehicle is not in use for a long time, it is recommended to reset the large screen to the default position on the driver side to reduce the long-term stress on the sliding mechanism.

 WARNING

- During the movement of the large screen, it is strictly prohibited to place hands or body parts into the slide rail area to prevent personal injury caused by the movement of the large screen.
- To prevent children from operating the large screen sliding function independently, adults need to supervise throughout the process to avoid children's accidental operation causing the screen to shift or lag, mechanical parts to be damaged, or their bodies to enter the operation area and affect driving safety.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

Audio Button



"" button: Short press to cycle the information display area on the instrument cluster.

"" button: Short press to wake up the voice recognition function; Long press to wake up the phone voice assistant (It is necessary to connect with phone).

Roll roller left and right: Switch previous/next track, answer/hang up a call.

Roll roller up and down: adjust the volume.

Press down roller: Multimedia pause/playback, mute.

Voice Recognition Function

Voice recognition function can control the functions (such as navigation, phone, window, moon roof, air conditioning, seat heating, seat ventilation) by voice, so that you can have a better experience while driving.

Voice recognition function can be waken up using the following methods when audio system is turned on:

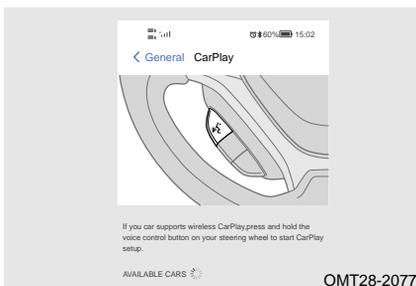
Method 1: Directly say wake-up words to wake up the voice recognition function.

Method 2: Short press the "" button to enable the voice recognition function.

Phone-link

Apple CarPlay (iOS)

■ Connecting method



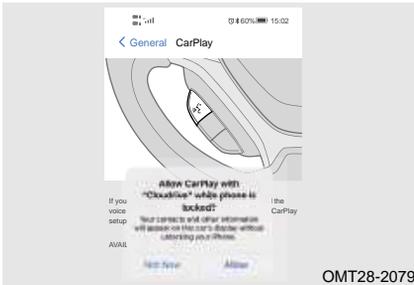
Step 1: Turn on phone Bluetooth list/CarPlay on-board interface.

Step 2: Pairing with the head unit pops up on the phone. First connect the Bluetooth, then "Whether CarPlay connection is performed" pops up on the phone, click confirmation to connect it.



Step 3: Connect USB port and phone using original data cable;

Note: Only USB port "  " supports Apple CarPlay screencast function.



Step 4: Select Allow on CarPlay permission request screen;

Step 5: Enter Apple CarPlay screencast screen.

■ Wireless carplay connection (if equipped)

Step 1: Turn on hotspot on Apple phone, audio head unit WIFI interface is connected to phone hotspot.

Step 2: Connect Apple phone to Bluetooth on audio head unit.

Step 3: Select Carplay according to interface that pops up on audio head unit or phone.

Step 4: Make pairing connection according to pop-up interface on phone; after connection is successfully, audio head unit displays carplay interface.

Step 5: Enter Apple CarPlay screencast screen.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

Android Auto (Android)

■ Connecting method



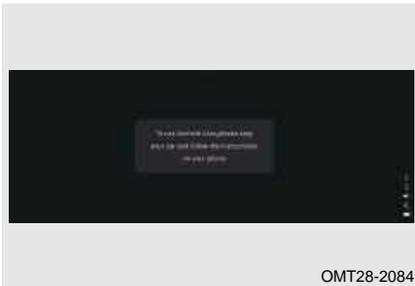
Step 1: Install the Google Framework;

Step 2: Perform the installation in Google Play and run Android Auto, install all supporting software according to the system prompt and update the existing program, and then Android Auto can run normal after completing the update.



Step 3: Connect USB port and phone using original data cable;

Note: Only USB port "  " supports Android Auto screencast function. Before phone-link, please turn on the developer permissions in the phone settings.



Step 4: If this phone is connected to the vehicle for the first time (a prompt will pop up on the head unit, please operate according to the prompt on the mobile phone, stop the vehicle and apply the parking brake), then the first connection setting can be completed;

Step 5: Click "Android Auto" on the audio main screen to enter "Android Auto" mapping interface.

■ Wireless Android Auto connection (if equipped)

Step 1: Turn on wireless Android Auto switch on the phone.

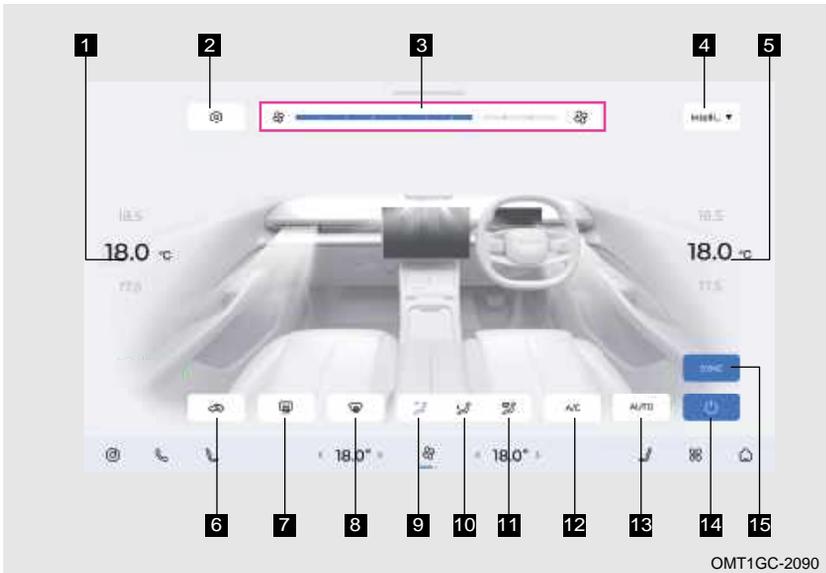
Step 2: Turn on Wi-Fi hotspot on head unit.

Step 3: Perform Bluetooth pairing between head unit and mobile phone.

Step 4: After Bluetooth connection is successful, a reminder to start wireless Android Auto will pop up on head unit, click "START" to complete wireless Android Auto connection.

3-6. Air Conditioning System

Front A/C



1 Front passenger temperature adjustment area

2 Setting button

3 Airflow volume adjustment area

4 Intelligent mode button (if equipped)

5 Driver temperature adjustment area

6 Outside/recirculated air mode button

7 Rear defrosting button

8 Front defogging and defrosting button

9 Face mode button

10 Foot mode button

11 Window mode button

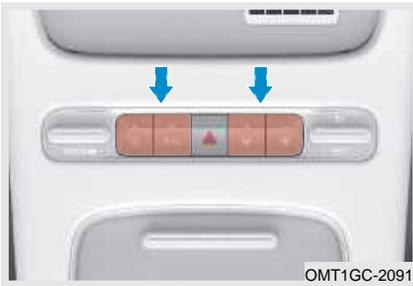
12 A/C switch button

13 AUTO button

14 A/C button

15 Dual mode button

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION



"  ": A/C switch button

"A/C": A/C button.

"  ": Defogging and defrosting button.

"  ": Rear defrosting button.

READ

Function buttons are different depending on the vehicle configuration. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.

A/C Setting



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, set the Automatic defogging function (Off/Low/Medium/High), Custom air conditioner (Eco/Mid/Strong), Automatic cabin ventilation and Automatic cabin cleaning, Welcome function, Automatic air purification operation on HVAC screen.

Automatic defogging function: A/C will automatically defog when there is a risk of fogging in vehicle to ensure driving safety.

Custom air conditioner: Set automatic A/C working state.

Automatic cabin cleaning: A/C will perform self-cleaning on time automatically after user locks and leaves the vehicle.

Automatic cabin ventilation: The vehicle will be automatically ventilated before unlocking and entering the vehicle.

Air Conditioning Operation

Temperature adjustment

Operate the temperature adjustment area to realize the adjustment of air conditioning temperature.

Airflow volume adjustment

Operate the airflow volume adjustment area to realize the airflow volume adjustment of air conditioning.

A/C switch button

Click A/C switch button to realize on/off of air conditioning system.

A/C button

Click A/C button to realize air conditioning cooling (air conditioning compressor starts to operate).

Dual mode button

Click the dual mode button to switch between single mode/dual mode (Air conditioning temperature of driver/front passenger can be adjusted separately).

 **READ**

System will memorize the operation before head unit is turned off last time by default when turning on head unit.

Mode adjustment button

Window mode, face mode, and foot mode can be used separately or in combination, with a total of 7 modes: Window mode, face mode, foot mode, face and foot mode, foot and window mode, face and window mode, face, foot and window mode.

Window mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from defroster outlet.

Foot mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from foot outlet.

Face mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from center and face outlets on both sides.

Foot and window mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from foot and window outlets.

Face and foot mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from center and face and foot outlets on both sides.

Face and window mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from center and face and window outlets on both sides.

Face, foot and window mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from center and face, foot and window outlets on both sides.

 **READ**

If front windshield become fogged-up during driving, defrosting mode is recommended. Click the defogging and defrosting button.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

Outside/recirculated air mode button

The outside/recirculated air mode can be switched by clicking the outside/recirculated air mode button.

■ Use the recirculated air mode under following conditions:

1. In dusty environment.
2. To quickly cool the air in the vehicle.
3. To isolate other odors from outside.
4. To prevent outside exhaust gas from entering vehicle.

AUTO button

Click AUTO button to turn on automatic mode.

■ System remains in automatic mode under following conditions:

1. Click AUTO button in automatic mode, and system does not exit the automatic mode.
2. In automatic mode, outside/recirculated air mode switches and the outside/recirculated function exits from the automatic control, and other functions are still in the automatic mode.
3. When operating A/C button or mode adjustment button or adjusting air volume in automatic mode, the operated function will exit the automatic mode, however, other functions will still in automatic mode.

Defogging and defrosting button

After vehicle is started, click defogging and defrosting button to turn on (adjust airflow to make most of it blow to front windshield and small amount of it blow to side window) /off front windshield defogging and defrosting function.

When the airflow volume is turned on, operate defogging and defrosting button to turn on outside air mode and air conditioning compressor forcibly.

READ

- If the A/C fails to cool, the defogging effect will be affected. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When defogging in humid climate (such as rain and snow), please keep A/C on. If A/C is off, the defogging effect will be affected.
- When defogging in humid climate (such as rain and snow), please keep in outside air mode. If recirculated air mode is selected, the defogging effect will be affected.
- After wiping off all frost or fog, adjust mode and airflow volume to other proper position to improve comfort in vehicle.
- When defogging in winter, please keep in outside air mode. To adjust to the direction of partial heat, make air outlets on both sides of the instrument panel face the both sides of windows; when outside temperature is above 0°C, A/C auxiliary defogging is needed.

⚠ CAUTION

- For driving safety, please use the defogging function correctly.
- Do not use recirculated air mode for a long time in winter, otherwise the front windshield will be fogged up quickly.
- Poor glass visibility will increase the risk of traffic accidents and personal injury. Therefore, it is very important for traffic safety to ensure a good visibility during driving.

Rear defrosting button

After vehicle is started, click rear defrosting button to turn on/off rear windshield/outside rear view mirror defrosting function.

The rear windshield/outside rear view mirror defrosting function will turn off automatically after operating for about 20 minutes.

⚠ CAUTION

- The outside rear view mirror defrosting function is not a standard configuration. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.
- Do not scratch or damage the heater wires when cleaning the rear windshield/outside rear view mirror.
- Make sure that the defrosting function of rear windshield/outside rear view mirror is turned off after defogging or defrosting the rear windshield/outside rear view mirror surface.
- When the battery is low, the rear windshield/outside rear view mirror defrosting function may not be turned on to ensure the normal starting of vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

To prevent burning yourself, do not touch the rear windshield/outside rear view mirror when the defrosting function of rear windshield/outside rear view mirror is operating or immediately after being turned off.

Air Conditioning Heating

After vehicle is started, operate the audio system temperature adjustment area and airflow volume adjustment area; It is recommended to adjust mode to foot mode and turn off refrigeration system (A/C indicator turns off, and air conditioning compressor stops operating) or set the temperature to 22 °C or higher, click the AUTO button, and air conditioning will automatically operate and heat to a comfortable temperature.

Turn on AUTO mode and setting the temperature to 22 °C will better balance the A/C effect and energy consumption. If the heating demand is greater, it is recommended to turn on AUTO mode and set the temperature above 22°C for better A/C effect.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

A/C Cooling

After vehicle is started, click audio system AUTO button and A/C automatically controls operation of mode, airflow volume, outside/recirculated air mode and refrigeration system. In order to adapt to the different people's physique, the setting temperature can be fluctuated up and down at 22°C, which can obtain the best cooling effect.

Turn on AUTO mode and setting the temperature to 22 °C will better balance the A/C effect and energy consumption. If the refrigeration demand is greater, it is recommended to turn on AUTO mode and set the temperature below 22°C for better A/C effect.

■ For the best cooling effect, please keep the surface of A/C filter clean without obvious blockage, then operate as follows:

Step 1: Adjust air volume to the maximum level;

Step 2: Adjust temperature to Max Cool;

Step 3: Adjust outside/recirculated air mode to recirculated air mode;

Step 4: Adjust to face mode;

Step 5: Turn on the refrigeration system (A/C indicator turns on, and air conditioning compressor starts operating).

 READ

- Dirt and blockage in the surface of air conditioning condenser may cause poor cooling effect, please keep condenser clean.
- When air cools down quickly in hot and humid conditions, the fog may be seen from outlet, which is a normal physical phenomenon.
- When the temperature is low, such as in winter, the A/C compressor may not be started even if indicator comes on after operating A/C button.
- After the A/C system cooling operation, some water may drip from the air conditioning drain pipe and form a pool under vehicle, which is normal.
- After temperature in vehicle decreases to a lower temperature, compressor will turn off automatically to reduce the influence on power of power system and fuel consumption, this is normal.
- Refrigerant filled in air conditioning system will decrease over time, if you feel that the refrigeration effect of air conditioning becomes poor, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair in time.
- It is recommended to turn on air conditioning refrigeration system for 5 minutes or more every month and open the window simultaneously, this will help to prevent air conditioning system damage due to lack of lubricant, and also prevent evaporator odor due to moist and germs.
- During sudden acceleration, overtaking and climbing, power system needs more power for compensation. At this time, if the air conditioning is operating, the compressor may be turned off automatically, if it does not turn off automatically and you feel it is lack of power, it is recommended to turn off air conditioning.
- If air conditioning is on and vehicle is continually climbing long slopes, or is in heavy slow moving traffic for a prolonged period, the engine may become overheated. Please observe the high coolant temperature warning indicator. If engine overheats, it is recommended to drive vehicle to a safe area and stop it, turn off A/C and let vehicle idle for several minutes, then check if high coolant temperature warning indicator goes off. If not, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

WARNING

- To extend service life of air conditioning system, do not use the air conditioning for a long time with low speed when performing air conditioning cooling.
- It is forbidden to repair air conditioning system by yourself, as the high pressure refrigerant in air conditioning system is harmful to human. It is necessary to go to authorized service station for inspection and repair.
- Please purchase special refrigerant and compressor lubricant at the authorized service station, or air conditioning system damages sustained by this are not under warranty.
- In hot weather, the temperature in closed vehicle will quickly increase due to sunshine, this may cause personal or animal injury or even death, especially for infants and very young children.

Intelligent Mode (If Equipped)

Quick heating

All windows are closed, seat heating (if equipped) is turned on, outside circulation is turned on with maximum airflow and highest temperature, and foot mode is turned on; Wait until the inside temperature reaches the comfortable temperature or manually click this button to automatically turn off the quick heating.

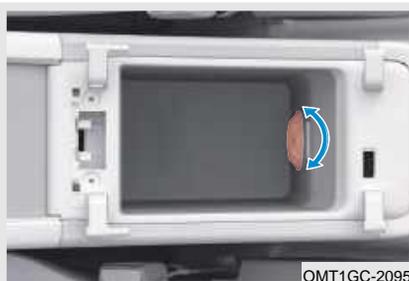
Quick cooling

All windows are closed, seat ventilation (if equipped) is turned on, inside circulation is turned on with maximum airflow and lowest temperature, and face mode is turned on; Wait until the inside temperature reaches the comfortable temperature or manually click this button to automatically turn off the quick cooling.

Intelligent deodorization

Outside circulation is turned on with maximum airflow.

Refrigeration/Warming Function of Armrest Box



Place the required items (such as canned drinks) in armrest box, adjust A/C to face or face/foot mode and perform A/C refrigeration/warming operation, then turn the internal damper of the armrest box to refrigerate/warm the required items.

⚠ WARNING

Armrest box cannot be closed if the items is oversize. The opened armrest box may hinder the movement of driver' s arm, be careful not to be injured.

Air Outlets Airflow Control**Front outlets**

Move center outlet adjustment lever up and down, left and right by hand to adjust direction of airflow.

Front side outlets

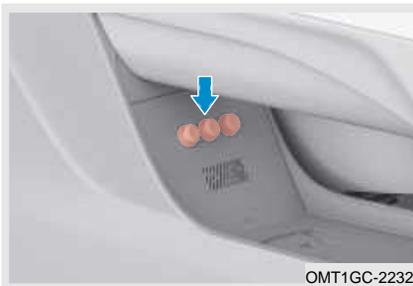
Move left/right side outlet adjustment lever up and down, left and right by hand to adjust direction of airflow.

Second row outlets

Move the second row outlet adjustment lever up, down, left or right by hand to adjust direction of airflow.

3-7. Fragrance System**Fragrance System (If Equipped)**

The fragrance system keeps the air inside the vehicle clean, remove odors, and acts as an air purifier. It is beneficial to driver's safety, and it can create a cosy and inviting atmosphere in the narrow interior space of the vehicle to keep driver alert and calm, thus reducing the incidence of driving accidents.

Replacing fragrance

Step 1: Hold the fragrance handle and pull out the fragrance bottle outward;

Step 2: Remove the old fragrance bottle and replace it with a new one;

Step 3: Insert the fragrance bottle into the channel of the fragrance generator in order, so that the fragrance bottle and the fragrance generator can engage automatically.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

CAUTION

- Please store the fragrance cartridge in a cool and dry place and avoid direct sunlight.
- Please avoid direct inhalation through the mouth and nose, and use with caution for people who are sensitive to scent.
- The fragrance concentration will gradually fade over time, please use the fragrance cartridge as soon as possible after opening.
- Please keep the fragrance cartridge out of the reach of children to avoid harm to them (to avoid accidental ingestion by children).
- Care should be taken when removing/installing the fragrance box to avoid damage. It is recommended to go to authorized service station to be operated by after-sales personnel.
- Please go to authorized service station to purchase the fragrance cartridge to replace, so as to avoid damaging the fragrance system and ensure the best fragrance experience.
- The fragrance cartridge needs to be replaced regularly, and the validity period is 12 months if the cartridge is not opened. It is recommended to replace it after 3 months or according to the system prompt after opening.

3-8. Driving Recorder

Driving Recorder (If Equipped)

The driving recorder can record the video image and sound of the whole driving process, which can provide evidence for traffic accidents. People who like self-driving travel can also use it to record the process of overcoming difficulties and dangers. It records the time, speed and light in the video while driving, which is similar to a "black box".

Installing Micro SD card



Please insert Micro SD card of Class10 or above version before power on, and the partition format of the card is FAT32.

The Micro SD card is installed behind the inside rear view mirror (as shown in the illustration).

Note: The maximum memory of the memory card is 128 GB.

Connection and display



The driving recorder is connected to the audio system through Wi-Fi and is displayed and operated on the audio system. Click driving recorder application to enter the real-time screen of it.

READ

- There is a certain delay in Wi-Fi transmission, so the real-time screen displayed on the audio system has a certain delay compared with the actual screen in front of the vehicle seen by the human eyes.
- The Wi-Fi connection between audio system and driving recorder may be disconnected after exiting the driving recorder. When clicking the driving recorder application again, it needs to reconnect Wi-Fi. This process will take a certain time. Please wait patiently.

Video

Start vehicle, the driving recorder starts recording, the red dot on upper left corner of real-time screen on audio system flashes, and REC is displayed. And the time in middle of the screen increases by seconds.

The video is recorded and stored in video folder by sections. When the video folder is full, the earliest recorded video will be automatically overwritten.

READ

Under normal recording, the indicator light of the recorder is blue; Under abnormal conditions, the indicator light of the recorder is red.

CAUTION

Do not unplug the Micro SD card directly during video recording. If the Micro SD card is needed to unplug, please pause the recording or turn off driving recorder before unplugging.

Emergency video

When the driving recorder is in normal working state, in case of collision, the driving recorder is not damaged and this function is activated, the video before and after the collision is recorded automatically for 10 s.

The emergency video is recorded and stored in emergency video folder. When the emergency video folder is full, the earliest recorded video will be

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

automatically overwritten, while the audio system will prompt with text: Driving recorder emergency video folder is full.

READ

In case of accidental collision, emergency video files are not guaranteed in each collision due to the insufficient collision intensity or other factors. If no emergency video is generated, you can find the video segment when accident occurs in video folder.

Parking monitoring

In the shutdown mode, in case of collision, the driving recorder is not damaged and this function is activated, it will turn on and automatically record for 20 seconds, and then turn off.

The parking monitoring is recorded and stored in emergency video folder. When the emergency video folder is full, the earliest recorded video will be automatically overwritten, while the audio system will prompt with text: Driving recorder emergency video folder is full.

READ

- The parking monitoring function is on by default and can be turned off by setting.
- When the battery power is lower than a certain voltage value and the parking monitoring function is turned on, the driving recorder cannot be enabled by vibration.
- In case of accidental collision, the collision intensity may be insufficient or Others factors may exist, which does not guarantee that the driving recorder can enable every time to record video.

Taking photos and snapshot

Method 1: Click "  " button on real-time screen of audio system to take photos, one photo at each time.

Method 2: Turn vehicle power to ON mode, press the "☆" button to capture when driving recorder snapshot is customized through Audio System - Settings - Quick Control - Steering Wheel Buttons.

Photo/video playback

Entering the driving recorder to view cyclic video, emergency video and images.

In the video or emergency video folder, slide up and down, select and click a video to enter the playback screen to play the video. You can pause, continue, switch to the previous/next video, and delete video.

In the video file list screen, long press a video, a small circle will appear in the top right corner of the video thumbnail, with "✓" indicating that the video is selected, multiple or single choice is allowed, click Delete to delete the selected video. Deleted video is not recoverable.

During video recording, when the overlay switch of driving information is ON, you can see the date, time and driving status when recording this video in the information bar of video playback screen.

CAUTION

In the process of deleting videos or pictures, do not unplug Micro SD card or cut power off to avoid damaging Micro SD card.

Setting

Click "  " to enter the setting screen of driving recorder, set the driving information overlay, audio recording during recording, recording resolution, recording time, snapshot method, vibration sensitivity, wide dynamic, parking monitoring, storage space, format memory card, version information and restore default setting.

READ

In the process of formatting the memory card, do not unplug the card or cut power off to avoid damaging the memory card or recorder.

3-9. Wireless Charging

Wireless Charging (CWC) (If Equipped)

Wireless charging uses electromagnetic induction technology conveniently and safely to allow for a better experience while driving.

Wireless charging area is located on auxiliary fascia console. When starting the vehicle, place the mobile phone (supporting the wireless charging function) in the wireless charging area with the mobile phone screen facing up, the mobile phone automatically enters wireless charging, accompanied by a charging icon change on audio system screen.



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, turn on Wireless Charging through Audio System - Setting - Connect.

Note : The wireless charging function is enabled by default.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

Usage methods



Turn vehicle power to non-OFF mode and the wireless charging function is enabled, when the wireless charging starts to work after putting the mobile phone in wireless charging sensing area, the audio system updates the charging icon in real-time based on the charging status. If the charging fails, the charging icon turns red.

■ In the following conditions, the wireless charging may not work properly:

1. The mobile phone cannot be charged if the back of phone is more than 6 mm away from wireless charging sensing area.
2. The mobile phone cannot be charged if the back of the phone has thick metal (such as coin, metal mobile phone shell), and audio system charging icon prompts abnormal charging.
3. If the temperature of the phone itself or the wireless charging sensing area (-surface) is too high, the phone may not be able to enter charging mode. It is recommended to wait for the temperature to decrease before charging.
4. Due to different information security requirements from different mobile phone manufacturers, some brand of phones may not be able to release fully charged information to the wireless charging module, and even after being fully charged, the screen of the head unit still displays the charging status icon.
5. If the phone malfunctions, it may also cause the inability to charge. Other compliant mobile phones can be used for wireless charging detecting to confirm if there is a malfunction with the phone.

READ

Wireless charging function supports fast charging for some phones (50W).

 CAUTION

- Wireless charging function only supports mobile phones with wireless charging function.
- In the process of normal use of the vehicle, there will be a temporary charging shielding, so that vehicle may identify the smart key. At the same time, do not place metal objects such as the smart key on the wireless charging tray.
- If the mobile phone cannot be charged normally when the vehicle is awakened, make sure that there is no foreign matter in the wireless charging area and wait for the wireless charging area to cool before trying. If it is still unable to charge, it is recommended that you contact authorized service station.
- Please put the mobile phone in the center of mobile phone slot. If the phone shakes when (accelerating, decelerating or turning sharply) or driving in poor road conditions, it may affect charging efficiency and stability. Charging interruption is a normal phenomenon.
- Only the mobile phones which supports wireless charging can be charged in this area. If your mobile phone does not support the wireless charging function, it is recommended that do not use the wireless charging patch. The quality of the wireless charging patch in the market is uneven, and damage may be caused if using frequently (such as function failure, poor interface contact, metal foreign object recognition failure).

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

WARNING

- Passengers using pacemakers or other medical devices should turn off the phone wireless charging function before driving.
- During driving, do not check the charging status of mobile phone for a long time to avoid potential traffic safety hazard.
- Do not place heavy objects in the charging area or impact the surface of the wireless charger to avoid damage to the charging area.
- During the program upgrade process, please do not place any items in the charging area to avoid abnormal wireless charging function after the upgrade.
- The wireless charging module only supports charging one phone at a time, and the company does not make promises for any problems caused by illegal operations.
- During wireless charging, do not place ETC card/ID card/NFC card key/credit card, etc. in the charging area, as this may cause damage to card data.
- To prevent battery depleted, do not use high-power wireless charging function for a long time when the vehicle is not applied high voltage; When there is no driver in vehicle, please do not place your phone in the vehicle for charging to avoid safety hazards.
- Do not splash liquids (water, beverages, etc.) on the charging panel to prevent liquids from entering the wireless charger through the gaps in the charging panel, causing charger failure. Do not use grease, oil or alcohol to clean the charging panel. If you accidentally spill liquid on the charging panel, please wipe it immediately with a dry cloth.
- Do not place coins, keys, chip cards or other metal items in the charging area. Otherwise, it may cause the metal object to be heated, leading to abnormal charging or causing safety accidents. If any metal foreign matter between mobile phone and charging pad is found, the wireless charging function should be immediately turned off. Do not remove the foreign matter immediately by hand to avoid burns.

Phone forgetting reminder function



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, turn on Forget reminder through Audio System - Settings - Connect.

Turn vehicle power to OFF mode, open driver door, if mobile phone is left in wireless charging sensing area, the audio system sounds prompt: "Mobile device is still in vehicle".

3-10. Remote Control System

Remote Control System (If Equipped)

User can remotely view the vehicle status (including lock status, engine status, window status, moon roof status, back door status, tyre temperature and pressure, remaining fuel, etc.) on their mobile phone APP, and remotely control the vehicle to improve driving efficiency, monitoring and protection of the vehicle.

READ

For details about activation and usage of vehicle control function, refer to electronic manual in mobile APP, or contact authorized service station.

CAUTION

Due to product version upgrade or other reasons, the information company will update or revise the contents herein from time to time without prior notice. Please make sure that you refer to the latest version before using the product.

Introduction of Product Functions

Activating Telematics

To activate the telematics equipment system, go to "Garage". The activation status is displayed on the vehicle's dashboard. If you have more than one car in the Garage, go to the detailed page of the required car and click on the "Activate " button to activate it.

Quick access to management

After activating the car, on the Garage page you will be able to control the car using the quick access toolbar, as well as view various vehicle indicators. The list of commands displayed in this panel can be configured in the "Telematics Settings" section on the detailed vehicle management page.

Customize your vehicle control commands.

■ When using commands from the Quick Access toolbar, it is important to consider several points

To avoid unauthorized access to driving, every 10 minutes you will be prompted for the access code that was previously set when activating telematics.

To execute commands, you must hold down the call button for three seconds until the button's progress is complete and you feel a vibration-a sign that the command has been completed. You will also see a notification about the status of the sent command.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

Vehicle metrics and indicators

On the page of your car in the Garage, you can see the following indicators :

- Vehicle control status based on the selected quick control buttons: For example, whether the car's central locking system, windows, trunk, or sunroof are open or closed.
- Vehicle level/charge, as well as charging status (charging status: currently charging)
- Available number of kilometers based on your level/charge.
- Vehicle interior temperature and air conditioner status (off/on).

Tyre indicators - pressure level in kPa, as well as tyre temperature. If the indicators deviate from the norm, the tyre indicators will be highlighted in red.

Detailed management page

By clicking on the "Go to Telematics" button on a separate car management page, you will see a dynamic model of the car that displays the current status of all its doors, trunk and sunroof. If you need to make sure that the doors, sunroof, or trunk are closed, just go to this page and check the condition of your vehicle.

Main control

In this section, you can track the position of the doors, as well as open and close the trunk, sunroof, and windows.

The following positions are supported for windows and sunroof:

- Open it in full.
- Tilt for sunroof and ventilation for windows;
- To close

Note: If the command buttons have an active status and are highlighted, it means that the commands are active

Climate control

In this section, you can control the temperature of your car.

■ To change the temperature settings, you need to:

1. Select commands by clicking on the interior heating/ventilation buttons (- seats, air conditioning, heated steering wheel, etc.) available in your car configuration.
2. Set the temperature of the air conditioner and the operating time of the cooling/heating system.
3. Commands will work instantly. Wait for the status of the command execution in the toast system.

In addition, a set of commands is provided for heating or cooling the machine by default. Just click on the "All heating systems" or "All cooling systems" and then click on the "Apply" button.

If you decide to reset all previously applied temperature settings, click on the "Reset All" button and then hold down the "Apply" button for 3 seconds.

Search for a car on the map

Go to the "Find a car" section to view the car's location on the map. Use a sound and light signal to search on the spot.

The map shows the location of your car, as well as your current location. When you use the "Beep and Light Signals" command, your vehicle will beep and turn on its headlights, which will help you find it.

For your convenience, you can search for places on the map, starting from gas stations and ending with the control zones that you have created. Just drag the search modal window to your location and select a category of places: parking lots, charging stations, gas stations, services, and places where car products are sold. When you find the desired location on the map, send it to the car so that the car can plot a route between the current location and the selected location in the mobile app. The search history displays all the requested addresses.

READ

Only operation introduction for some functions of remote control is provided above. For specific usage, please refer to the mobile phone software and the real vehicle.

3-11. Storage Space

Storage Space

Door storage boxes



Storage boxes on front and the second row doors can be used for storing maps, cups and others items.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

Glove box (If Equipped)



Glove box is used to store map, instructions and other items.

Pull the glove box handle to unlock the glove box. Pull the glove box to turn on glove box light.

WARNING

Before driving, make sure that the glove box is closed in place. Otherwise in case of emergency braking or emergency steering, it may cause accidents and serious injury or even death.

Armrest box



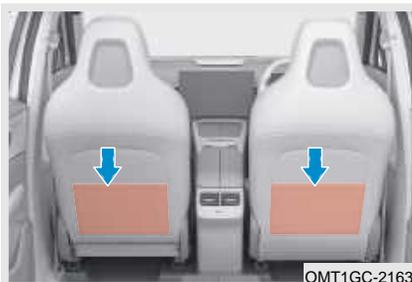
Armrest box is used to store maps, instructions and other items.

Press armrest box button to unlock the auxiliary fascia console armrest box, armrest box light comes on when it is opened.

WARNING

- Adults or children are not allowed to sit on armrest box.
- Armrest box must be closed when the vehicle is running, and the opening armrest box may hinder the driver's arm movement to prevent injury.

Seat storage bag



Front seatbacks are both equipped with storage bags on backside, which are used to store documents, instruction etc.

Luggage compartment



To enlarge space for stowing luggage, the rear seats can be folded when no passenger is in rear seats.

■ When stowing luggage in the vehicle, observe the following precautions:

1. Be careful to keep the vehicle balanced.
2. For better fuel economy, do not stow unneeded items.
3. Make sure that the stowing items are not oversize to prevent the luggage compartment from closing properly.

WARNING

- Do not drive the vehicle with the back door open or not closed, to prevent items from being thrown out to cause personal injury.
- Do not allow anyone to sit in the luggage compartment. The passengers should sit in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened. Otherwise, they may be seriously injured in event of sudden braking or a collision.
- Do not stack goods or luggage higher than seatback. Keep them low, as close to the floor as possible to prevent them sliding forward in event of braking, causing personal injury.

Carrier



Roof carrier is used for loading cargo, with a load of 75 kg. Be sure that the total weight of the loading cargo on the carrier or loading tool (- such as luggage compartment, cross rod) does not exceed 75 kg.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

CAUTION

- Never allow the loaded long or wide cargoes to exceed the overall length or width of the vehicle.
- Overweight will cause carrier, moon roof glass, body roof and other components to be damaged, the various problems caused by overweight are not under the warranty.
- Before driving, make sure the cargo is securely attached to the roof carrier. Blankets or other protection items can be placed between the cargo and the roof. Be careful not to scratch the roof surface.

WARNING

- Apply loads evenly. Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control, which may cause serious injury or even death.
- Loading cargo on carrier will raise the vehicle center of gravity. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate vehicle.

3-12. USB Port

Front USB

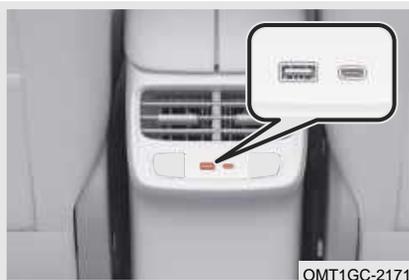


Front USB is located on the lower part of auxiliary fascia console (as shown in the illustration).

Type-A port: It can be used for reading U disc, phone connect and charging the electrical equipment with low power, such as phone etc.

Type-C port: It can be used for charging the electrical equipment with low power, such as phone etc.

Rear USB



Rear USB is located at the rear of center armrest box (as shown in the illustration).

Type-A port: It can be used for charging the electrical equipment with low power, such as phone etc.

Type-C port: It can be used for charging the electrical equipment with low power, such as phone etc.

3-13. Backup Power Supply (12 V)

Front Backup Power Supply



Front backup power supply is located on the lower part of auxiliary fascia console (as shown in the illustration).

Backup power supply can be used only when vehicle power is switched to ACC/ON mode.

Rear Backup Power Supply (If equipped)

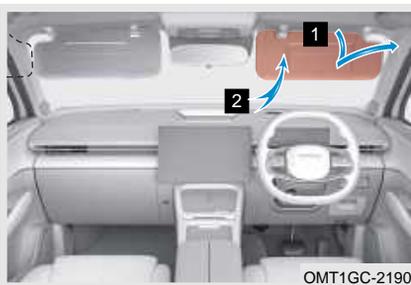
Backup power supply can be used only when vehicle power is switched to ACC/ON mode.

 CAUTION

- To prevent the battery from depleting, do not use backup power supply longer than necessary.
- To prevent the fuse from being blown, do not use electrical equipment with high power (120 W or more).
- Do not insert anything or allow any liquid to get into the backup power supply other than an appropriate plug. Failure to do so may cause electrical failure or short circuits.

3-14. Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors

Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors



Flip the sun visor down and move the vanity mirror slid board parallel to use the vanity mirror, and the corresponding vanity mirror light (if equipped) comes on.

- 1** Flip the sun visor down.
- 2** Detach the hook and turn it outward to shade the side light.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

3-15. Front Compartment Cover

Opening/Closing Front Compartment Cover



Step 1: The hood will spring up slightly when the hood release lever is pulled twice;

Step 2: Lift the hood up and lift and support the hood under action of the air spring;

Step 3: Lower the hood and close it until the latch is locked;

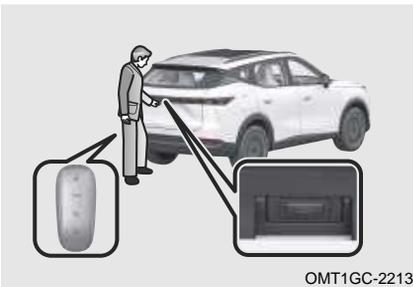
Step 4: After closing the hood, lift the hood lightly to check that hood is fully closed.

CAUTION

- Before closing the front compartment cover, check if you have not left any tools, rags etc. in the front compartment.
- When closing the front compartment cover, do not press it by hand, otherwise it may be deformed.
- Make sure that front compartment cover is closed before driving, otherwise accidents and personal injury may be caused.

3-16. Back Door

Manual Back Door (If Equipped)



Method 1: With central lock unlocked, approach the back of vehicle, press exterior switch on the back door and lift up to open the back door.

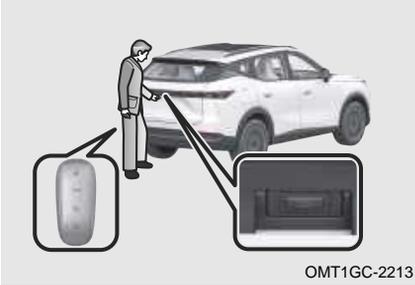
Method 2: With central lock locked, approach to back of vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, press back door exterior switch and lift up to open back door.

READ

When the central lock is locked, please unlock the central lock first, and then open it with back door exterior switch.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

Back door exterior switch



Method 1: With central lock unlocked, approach the back of vehicle and press exterior switch on the back door, turn signal lights will come on and power back door will be opened/closed.

Method 2: With central lock locked, approach to back of vehicle while carrying smart key on your person and press back door exterior switch, turn signal lights will come on and power back door will be opened/closed.

READ

When the central lock is locked, please unlock the central lock first, and then open it with back door exterior switch.

Back door interior switch



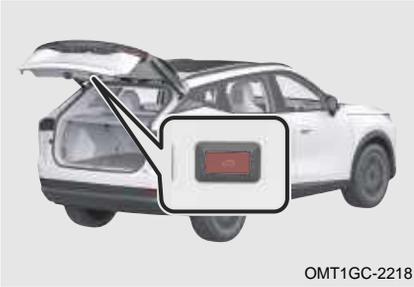
With the power back door open, press "🔒" button to close the power back door.

When the power back door is moving, press "🔒" button to suspend the action.

Back door opening height



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, side and adjust the Rear tailgate opening on high setting through Audio System - Settings - Vehicle Settings.



After the power back door is opened, adjust it to your desire height; long press "🔑" button until the vehicle gives a light prompt, and the power back door opening height is set successfully.

READ

- For details about voice recognition function, refer to "Audio System" section.
- If the back door opening height is too low or too high, the back door opening height cannot be set.
- When any switch (such as power back door switch, power back door button, back door open button) is activated during the movement of the power back door, the back door will stop moving.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

CAUTION

- When the back door is abnormal, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When the power back door opens, do not pull electric support rod laterally, which may cause damage to related parts.
- Before driving, make sure that the back door is closed properly, otherwise it may cause accidents and damage to related parts.
- Before opening the power back door, be sure to note that there should be nothing in the opening range, which could result in scratching the back door.
- When closing the back door, make sure that nobody will be caught. If closing is interrupted, close it again.
- When the power back door is opened to the highest position, it cannot be pushed or supported by hand to higher place, as this may cause damage to related parts.
- When closing power back door by hand, please operate gently. Never operate with brute force, failure to do so may cause damage to motor and module.
- When going uphill or downhill, due to change in the center of gravity, the power back door may not open or close. This is normal. Open or close it by hand.
- If the battery cable is disconnected and reconnected, the power back door needs to be manually closed to locked position at a constant speed, and then press the power back door switch to open/close the power back door normally.

WARNING

Make sure that the back door is closed before driving, otherwise, accidents and damage to related parts may be caused.

Power back door jam protection function

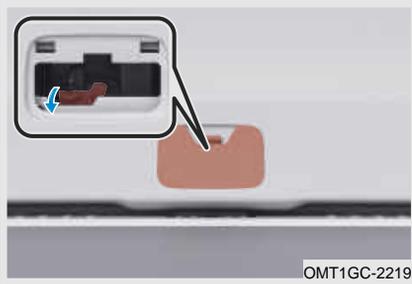
Positive jam protection: When power back door is opening, if it encounters resistance (such as wall, obstacle), the back door positive jam protection works to avoid vehicle damage.

Reverse jam protection: When power back door is closing, if it encounters resistance (such as children, luggage), the back door reverse jam protection works to avoid child injury and vehicle damage.

WARNING

Although the power back door is equipped with jam protection function, do not activate jam protection function on purpose to avoid accidental injury.

Back Door Emergency Opening



Back door cannot be opened when battery is depleted or under similar conditions. In this case, the back door can be opened with back door stand-by device switch (stop the vehicle as safely as possible if condition permits).

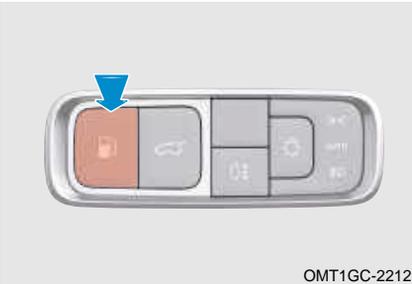
Step 1: Fold the rear seatback;

Step 2: Get in the rear of vehicle and open stand-by device cover;

Step 3: Press down the stand-by device switch with hand, release it, and then push the back door to open it.

3-17. Fuel Tank Cap

Electric Fuel Tank Cap



Step 1: With vehicle powered on, long press "  " button and instrument cluster displays "It is ready to refuel, please refuel" message, and fuel filler door will be unlocked after pressure relief is completed;



Step 2: After the vehicle arming is deactivated, push fuel tank cap, it will pop up;

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION



Step 3: Turn the fuel filler door counterclockwise;

Step 4: After refueling, turn fuel filler cap clockwise until a "click" sound is heard;

Step 5: Turn fuel tank cap to correct position and press to close it.

READ

Fuel may pollute environment. Therefore, the sprayed fuel should be collected and disposed by a professional.

CAUTION

- Never add diesel to fuel tank.
- After fuel filler cap is tightened firmly, loose your hand and the cap will turn slightly in the opposite direction. This is normal.
- To prevent damage to the cap, apply force only in the direction of rotation. Do not pull or pry the cap.
- A slight whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is opened, this is normal.
- When freezing at low temperature, after the vehicle arming is deactivated, tap fuel tank cap and then fuel tank cap opens. It is normal phenomenon.
- If fuel overflows during refueling, wipe it off immediately to avoid damage to vehicle paint surface.
- During driving, if fuel tank cap is not closed, drive vehicle to a safe area and stop it, then close the cap again.
- If the vehicle arming is not deactivated, never push fuel tank cap with a strong force as this may cause damage related components of fuel tank cap.

 **WARNING**

- If the fuel filler door is not tightened in place, it may cause the engine malfunction light comes on.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel, as the fuel contains substances that are harmful for the health.
- Before refueling, switch vehicle to power off state and close all doors and windows.
- Make sure that the fuel filler door is tightened securely, to prevent accident caused by fuel spillage.
- Do not attempt to continue to refuel after the fuel gun is automatically turned off! Otherwise, the fuel tank may be too full, causing fuel to overflow from the fuel tank, which can easily cause fire, explosion and serious injury.
- Do not remove the fuel filler door quickly when opening it. In hot weather, if cap is removed suddenly, high-pressed fuel vapor may be ejected from the filler neck and cause personal injury.
- After exiting the vehicle and before opening the fuel tank cap, touch an unpainted metal surface to discharge any static electricity. It is important to discharge static electricity before refueling, because sparks resulting from static electricity can cause fuel vapors to ignite while refueling.
- Because gasoline is extremely flammable, smoking and phone calls are prohibited in the gas station area, and there must be no other sparks or open flames.

4-1. Vehicle Power Mode	Auto Hold System (AUTO HOLD).....	142
Inspection and Preparation Before Driving.....	Vacuum Booster (If Equipped)	143
Vehicle Power-on	Foot Brake	144
Vehicle Power-off	4-4. Transmission	
Engine Self-maintenance	Automatic Transmission	145
4-2. Steering System	Column Shift Switch	146
Electric Power Steering System (EPS).....	Drive Mode	147
4-3. Brake System	4-5. Airbag	
Electric Parking Brake System (EPB).....	Airbag	149
	4-6. Event Data Recorder (EDR)	
	Event Data Recorder (EDR).....	155

4. DRIVING VEHICLE

4-1. Vehicle Power Mode

Inspection and Preparation Before Driving

Step 1: Check surroundings of vehicle before getting in;

Step 2: Adjust seat angle, head restraint height and steering wheel angle;

Step 3: Adjust angles of the inside and outside rear view mirrors;

Step 4: Fasten the seat belts;

Step 5: Confirm that the parking brake is applied and gear position is in P;

Step 6: With vehicle powered on, check if malfunction indicator and other indicators on meter are normal; if they are abnormal, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately;

Step 7: Carry smart key on your person or put it in vehicle, so that it can be detected normally; Depress brake pedal to start vehicle, and "READY" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Vehicle Power-on

Normal power-on

Unlock the vehicle, open the driver door, and the vehicle is automatically powered on.

READ

The vehicle is equipped with an alcohol lock, which needs to be installed at after-sales authorized service centre.

CAUTION

After vehicle is powered on, do not use electrical appliances of vehicle for a long period of time. When low battery is prompted, charge in time or use engine to charge by starting vehicle, otherwise the vehicle may not start due to power battery loss. When vehicle fails to start due to serious loss of power battery, it can be restarted by connecting the charging gun for charging. If it still cannot be started, please contact authorized service station.

Normal starting

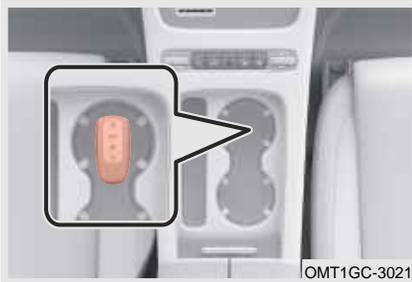
With vehicle powered on, carry the smart key on your person and enter the vehicle, depress brake pedal to start vehicle, and "READY" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

READ

When vehicle is in READY state, the motor is silent, make sure that the shift lever is shifted to P before leaving or locking vehicle.

Starting in emergency

When smart key battery is low or signal is seriously interfered, the vehicle cannot be started. Start according to following steps:



Lay smart key in auxiliary fascia console storage box with front side facing up (as shown in figure), depress brake pedal to start vehicle, and "READY" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

CAUTION

- Avoid engine idling for a long time as much as possible.
- When the vehicle is started, do not depress accelerator pedal when vehicle is started in any situations.
- Do not run cold engine at high speed or under high load (It is normal that the engine runs at high speed when the power battery of vehicle is depleted and vehicle is started in Sport mode).

WARNING

- It is recommended to allow engine to idle for a short time or drive at low speed for a certain distance after running engine at high speed or under high load for a long time.
- Do not touch high temperature components (such as engine, exhaust pipe, radiator) immediately after engine has just stopped, otherwise, burns may occur.
- It is forbidden to park on dry leaves, hay or other flammable materials or allow the vehicle to idle for a long time. When engine is running or the vehicle is just stopped, high temperature of exhaust pipe may cause fire.
- Slow down as much as possible before turning off power forcibly, the power assist of brake and steering wheel will lose, resulting in more effort when depressing brake pedal and heavier when turning steering wheel, otherwise it may cause personal injuries.

Vehicle Power-off

Normal power-off

Method 1: With vehicle powered on, driver seat not occupied, four doors closed, and gear position in P, perform vehicle locking operation, and the vehicle is powered off.

4. DRIVING VEHICLE

Method 2: With vehicle in READY state, driver door open, driver seat not occupied, gear position in P, turn the vehicle to power-on state, close the four doors, and perform vehicle locking operation, the vehicle is powered off.

Power-off switch

When the vehicle is in a stationary state for a long time, perform power-off through the vehicle power-off switch in the head unit display to reduce the loss of vehicle energy consumption.



When the vehicle is in a stationary state and the shift position is in P/N, press the vehicle power-off switch and confirm to turn off power supply of the vehicle according to the hints on head unit, the vehicle is powered off.

Automatic power-off

With vehicle powered on, driver seat not occupied, four doors closed, and gear position in P, the vehicle is powered off automatically after parking for about 90 minutes.

CAUTION

After the vehicle is stopped, the driver should always make the gear position in the P position through the P button before getting off, and then open the door and get off after determining the completion of the parking to prevent the vehicle from accidentally sliding.

WARNING

- Do not touch high temperature components (such as engine, exhaust pipe, radiator) immediately after engine has just stopped, otherwise, burns may occur.
- It is forbidden to park on dry leaves, hay or other flammable materials or allow the vehicle to idle for a long time. When engine is running or the vehicle is just stopped, high temperature of exhaust pipe may cause fire.

Engine Self-maintenance

In order to keep the engine in good condition for a long period of time without use, the engine will automatically run for a few minutes at preset intervals. Corresponding reminder "Engine enters auto maintenance mode" will display on instrument cluster, and it disappears automatically after 5 seconds.

 READ

Do not stall the engine during engine auto maintenance. Auto maintenance will not be possible when fuel level is too low.

4-2. Steering System

Electric Power Steering System (EPS)

Electric power steering system uses torque generated by motor as power source of steering system, instead of assisting method using in general vehicle, that is, hydraulic pump is driven by engine.

Electric power steering system self-learning

After the vehicle battery is powered off and reconnecting or starting vehicle, due to the initialization of electric steering system angle, "⊕!" yellow indicator on instrument cluster blinks, turn the steering wheel left and right to the limit position to complete the angle reset, and the "⊕!" yellow indicator on instrument cluster turns off.

 CAUTION

- Frequent handling and rotation of steering wheel over long periods of time may damage the mechanism in EPS system.
- It is forbidden to turn the steering wheel left and right frequently and quickly at idle speed to prevent the system from overheating. If the system is overheating, heavy steering will occur, which is normal. Stop rotating the steering wheel and switch the vehicle power to OFF/ACC mode until the system cools down.

Electric power steering system indicator

When there is a fault, "⊕!" red indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

 WARNING

After EPS system is disabled, although the vehicle still has the conventional steering capability, it should be driven with caution. Please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

4. DRIVING VEHICLE

Steering force mode



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and turn on steering force mode through Audio System - Settings - Vehicle Settings; Steering force mode (Mid/Sport) can be set separately after turning off.

4-3. Brake System

Electric Parking Brake System (EPB)

EPB system is a technology that integrates temporary braking during driving and long-time braking after stopping, and implements parking brake by electronic control. This technology replaces the traditional hand-brake.

Usage methods



Power on the vehicle, depress brake pedal, press the parking brake switch on the swipe down screen of head unit system, "Ⓟ" red indicator on instrument cluster goes off, indicating that parking brake function has been released.

When the parking brake function is released, press parking brake switch, "Ⓟ" red indicator on instrument cluster remains on, indicating that parking brake function is activated.



Depress brake pedal, and park the vehicle smoothly. Press P button to shift the gear position to P, "Ⓟ" red indicator on instrument cluster remains on, indicating that parking function is activated.

Releasing parking brake automatically

- Fasten driver's seat belt and close driver door. When the vehicle is shifted from P to D/R on flat road, electric parking brake is released automatically, and "(P)" red indicator on instrument cluster goes off.
- With vehicle stopped on a slope, driver seat belt fastened and driver door closed, when the shift position is shifted from P to D/R, depress accelerator pedal deeply, and parking brake can be released automatically only when driving force is greater than slipping force.

READ

When towing vehicle, it is necessary to release parking brake, and the shift lever needs to be shifted into N.

CAUTION

- Electric parking brake system and auto hold system cannot be used when vehicle battery is depleted. Jumper cables can be used to start.
- While depressing brake pedal for releasing or applying parking brake, brake pedal may push slightly up or down, just depress the brake tightly.
- When performing automatic releasing of electric parking brake, fasten the driver's seat belt and close the driver door. Failure to do so may cause the automatic releasing conditions of parking brake cannot be satisfied.
- When enabling and releasing electric parking brake, "whooshing" sound may be heard from rear part of vehicle. This is the working sound emitted by parking brake and is normal.
- If vehicle coasts after stopping within a short period of time, system will increase parking brake force automatically to hold it for safety. When parking brake force is increasing, system makes operation sound. This is normal.

WARNING

To avoid accidental vehicle movement, when stopping or leaving the vehicle, after EPB system operates, the "(P)" red indicator on instrument cluster and indicator on electric parking button will go off automatically after coming on for a certain period of time, in this case, check if "(P)" red indicator on instrument cluster remains on to ensure that electric parking brake is applied.

Emergency braking function

If foot brake fails, pull up the electric parking brake button continuously to forcibly apply brake by parking brake. In this process, "(P)" red indicator on instrument cluster flashes. Release the button to exit emergency braking.

4. DRIVING VEHICLE

WARNING

- When emergency braking function is activated, it will drone. This is normal.
- When applying emergency braking, electric parking brake will apply brake at constant deceleration which is deviated from driver's desired deceleration and braking distance will be different.
- Use this function cautiously during normal driving. When driving, passengers should not touch button accidentally. Otherwise, it may cause an accident.
- Emergency braking function can only be used in case of emergency such as foot brake failure or brake pedal stuck. ESP and its components cannot exceed road traction physical limit. Use of the emergency braking function on windy roads, dangerous roads, in heavy traffic or severe weather, may lead to drifting, side slipping or pulling, so please be careful.

Electric parking emergency releasing (during vehicle stopping)

When EPB operates, press electric parking brake button and depress the brake pedal, as well as the vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, electric parking is released in emergency. It is recommended to use it only in rescue trailers or rare situations.

Auto Hold System (AUTO HOLD)

Auto hold system is used to prevent vehicle from rolling when vehicle is stationary and starts off.

Usage methods



Auto hold operation conditions

After vehicle starts, driver seat belt is fastened, driver door is closed.

Turning on auto hold function

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, the control center screen can be displayed by sliding the screen down in the audio screen. When auto hold conditions are met, click "Ⓐ" button to turn on the auto hold function, and "Ⓐ" white indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Activating auto hold function

When auto hold function is turned on, depress brake pedal, the gear position is in D and changes to stationary state from movement, auto hold function is activated and "Ⓐ" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Depress brake pedal when vehicle is stationary, and the auto hold function is turned on at the same time and the condition of auto hold is met, then auto hold function is activated, "Ⓐ" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Turning off auto hold function

When auto hold function is turned on, click "Ⓐ" button on control center screen to turn off the auto hold function, "Ⓐ" white indicator on instrument cluster turns off.

When auto hold function is activated, click "Ⓐ" button on control center screen to turn off the auto hold function, "Ⓐ" green indicator on the instrument cluster goes off, indicating that vehicle has exited auto hold function and switched to parking brake function.

Auto hold release function

Way to release auto hold is the same as that of electric parking brake, including manual release and automatic release.

CAUTION

- Turn off auto hold function before driving into car wash.
- The auto hold function can only be activated when vehicle is in D gear and cannot be activated when vehicle is in R gear.
- Always park vehicle correctly according to safety regulations and take care to avoid hurt yourself and pedestrians.
- If accelerator pedal is depressed very slowly, auto release of auto hold delays. This is normal.
- When auto hold function is activated, open driver door or unfasten driver seat belt, auto hold will switch to parking brake function.
- When auto hold function is enabled, open driver door or unfasten driver side seat belt to exit auto hold function, close the driver door or fasten the seat belt again to activate the auto hold function again.
- After auto hold function is enabled, the auto hold system will automatically park the vehicle after the vehicle comes to a complete stop from motion state by foot brake, but the gear position is still in D. It is recommended to shift to N for a short time parking and shift to P for a long time parking.

WARNING

To avoid vehicle accidentally moving, in the state of auto hold, confirm the shift position before you depressing accelerator pedal to start.

Vacuum Booster (If Equipped)

The vacuum booster is controlled by engine vacuum and it works only when the engine is running. Therefore, do not coast your vehicle with engine off.

4. DRIVING VEHICLE

READ

Brake control system is different depending on the configuration of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.

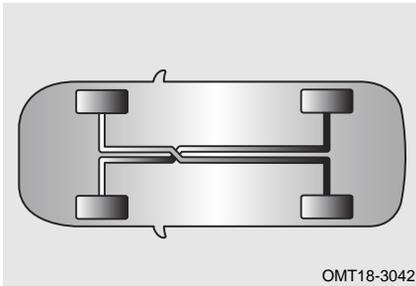
WARNING

Do not coast your vehicle with engine off while driving downhill. To achieve better braking effect, shift to low gear before driving downhill.

If the vacuum booster does not work because vehicle is being towed or malfunctioning, brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual to compensate booster braking effect.

In normal temperature, we recommend allowing the vehicle to idle for 15 seconds after the vehicle starts, if the temperature is lower, the time is longer. This is to allow it to quickly heat and to activate the three-way catalysts and improve waste gas conversion efficiency. It can also help restore the brake vacuum if the vehicle has been parked for a long time. We advise idling the vehicle for 15 seconds each time you start the vehicle.

Foot Brake



The brake system adopts X type arrangement, double circuit brake system; The system is a hydraulic system with two independent subsystems. If one of the subsystems fails, the other system can still perform brake function. However, brake pedal depressing force will be greater than usual as well as the braking distance, and the brake system malfunction indicator remains on.

WARNING

Do not drive vehicle under conditions in which only one brake system works. Please contact the authorized service station as soon as possible.

Brake system indicator

When there is a fault, "" red indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

WARNING

When there is a fault in brake system, check the brake fluid level, add brake fluid when the level is lower than MIN line. If reason is unclear, please contact the authorized service station immediately.

Precautions for brake system

1. If there is continuous shudder or vibration being transferred to the steering wheel during braking, please contact the authorized service station immediately for inspection and repair.
2. When driving downhill, shift to a low gear to make full use of engine braking effect and avoid continuous use of brakes. Failure to do so may cause the brakes to overheat and braking distance will become longer, and the brakes may even temporarily lose its effectiveness in a serious case.
3. The brake system will make some noises sometimes during operation, which is normal, but if you hear metal friction or a whistling sounds over a period of time, the brake linings may be seriously worn. Please contact the authorized service station for replacement immediately.
4. The new brake linings must be break-in to reach optimal brake effect. Braking effect in the first 124miles (200 km) is not optimal. In this case, depress brake pedal more firmly to compensate braking effect.
5. A wet brake may cause abnormal vehicle deceleration or pulling to one side when braking. Depress brake pedal slightly to test effectiveness of brakes. After driving through deep water, keep a safe vehicle speed and depress brake pedal slightly until braking function is restored.
6. Wear condition of brake lining depends largely on its working conditions and driving style. For vehicles mainly used in city traffic, frequent starting and stopping will make working condition of brake lining worsen. Therefore, please go to authorized service station according to specified maintenance mileage to check thickness of brake linings or replace it as needed.

4-4. Transmission

Automatic Transmission

The automatic transmission belongs to the electronically controlled automatic transmission.



Fully depress brake pedal and shift the shift lever to D; Release the parking brake manually or automatically and release the brake pedal, and then drive the vehicle slowly.

4. DRIVING VEHICLE

WARNING

- Never tow the vehicle for a long distance or at high speed. Raise drive wheels or disconnect propeller shaft when towing.
- When shift lever is in N, make sure parking brake is applied or brake pedal is depressed, otherwise an accident may occur.

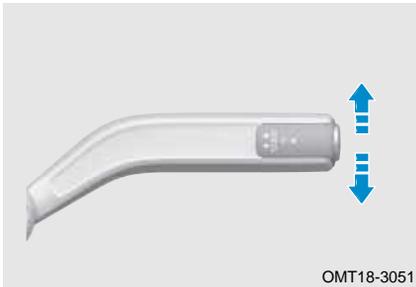
Fail-safe mode

When malfunction occurs in transmission system, fail-safe mode will be automatically activated, at the same time "  " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on; transmission cannot operate normally, and vehicle will slow down and be driven at low speed.

CAUTION

Long distance driving is not allowed in fail-safe mode. Otherwise, transmission will be damaged, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Column Shift Switch



P gear: When the vehicle is stationary, depress the brake pedal and the shift lever is not in P. Press the button on the right side of column shift switch to shift the shift lever to P.

R gear: When the vehicle is stationary, depress brake pedal, move up to the top and shift the shift lever to R.

D gear: When the vehicle is stationary, depress brake pedal, move down to the bottom and shift the shift lever to D.

N gear: When the vehicle is stationary, depress brake pedal and shift the shift lever to N by following operations.

1. When the gear position is in D/P, push up column shift once to shift to N.
2. When the gear position is in R, push down column shift once to shift to N.

Gear position introduction

Gear Position	Function
P gear	Park position. The vehicle can be started.
R gear	Reverse position. Back-up lights will come on and parking assist system will operate.
N gear	Neutral position. It is used for short time idling stop.
D gear	Forward driving position. Automatically shifts up and down among forward drive gears according to engine load and vehicle speed.

CAUTION

- Do not coast vehicle in N. Otherwise, the transmission will be damaged.
- Never shift in P position when the vehicle is not stopped steadily. This may lead to abnormal sound or damage to the transmission.
- Do not shift the shift lever out of D while the vehicle is moving forward. Otherwise, the transmission may be damaged seriously.
- Do not shift the shift lever out of R while the vehicle is moving backward. Otherwise, the transmission may be damaged seriously.
- When shifting the shift lever out of P, it is necessary to depress the brake pedal first to stop the vehicle steadily, and then perform shifting among each gear position. Otherwise shifting mechanism will be damaged.
- When vehicle malfunctions occur due to insufficient battery, even depressing the brake pedal, shifting out of P is impossible, please contact the authorized service station immediately for inspection and repair.
- When the vehicle is parked on a slope, the parking brake must be applied first, and then the shift lever is shifted into P. After starting on a slope, first shift the shift lever out of P, then release parking brake for driving.

Drive Mode

Drive mode



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and the vehicle is stationary or drives safely. Click drive mode button (NORMAL/SPORT/ECO) on control center to switch drive mode; And the corresponding mode indicator on instrument cluster will come on and prompt you that drive mode is switched successfully.

4. DRIVING VEHICLE



Turn vehicle power to ON mode and the vehicle is stationary or drives safely. Set drive mode (NORMAL/SPORT/ECO) through Audio System - Settings - Drive; And the corresponding mode indicator on instrument cluster will come on and prompt you that drive mode is switched successfully.



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and the vehicle is stationary or drives safely, toggle the drive mode button to cycle through the drive modes; And the corresponding mode icon on instrument cluster will come on and accompanied by voice reminder to prompt you that drive mode is switched successfully.

READ

The driving mode memory can be turned on/off through Audio System - Settings - Drive (only used to ECO/NORMAL/SPORT).

Driving mode introduction

The following information will help you understand the use of different driving modes, and you can select according to different road conditions.

Drive Mode	Function
Normal	Normal mode combines vehicle power and economy and is suitable for all kinds of roads.
ECO	ECO mode improves the fuel economy of the vehicle and is suitable for the flat and hard roads such as urban roads and paved roads.
Sport	Sport mode improves vehicle power and realizes higher response speed and driving experience. It is suitable for wide and flat roads with few vehicles (such as motorway).

READ

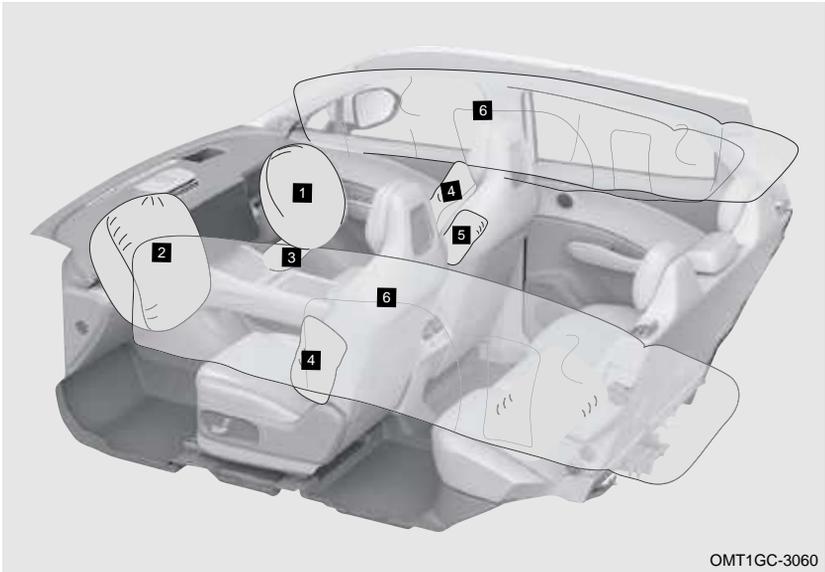
- Some driving modes are not standard. Please refer to the actual vehicle.
- ACC corresponding to ECO (Economic mode) accelerates gently, and ACC corresponding to SPORT (Sport mode) accelerates faster.

4-5. Airbag

Airbag

In severe frontal/side collision, the airbags deploy and work together with seat belts to protect occupants in vehicle. Automatically unlock doors, illuminate interior lights, and turn on hazard light after the airbag is deployed.

Airbag position



1 Driver Frontal Airbag

2 Front Passenger Frontal Airbag

3 Driver Knee Airbag (If Equipped)

4 Front Seat Side Airbag

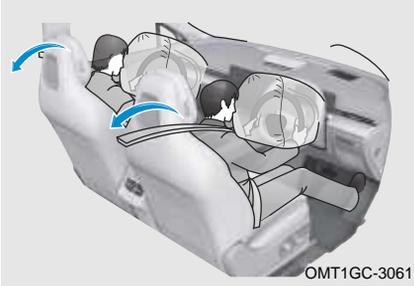
5 Center Airbag (If Equipped)

6 Curtain Side Airbag

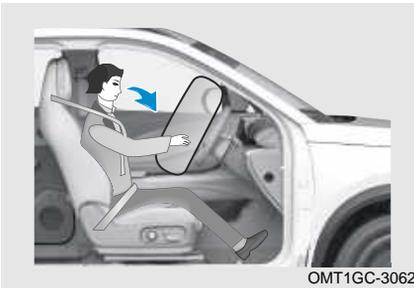
OMT1GC-3060

4. DRIVING VEHICLE

Using airbag correctly



In an event of a severe frontal collision, driver frontal airbag, front passenger frontal airbag and driver knee airbag (if equipped) work together with seat belts to help reduce injuries to the head or chest of driver and front passenger caused by hitting the interior component. (Front passenger frontal airbag may be activated even if there is no occupant in the front passenger seat).



The airbag will deploy only when the collision degree of vehicle reaches the design condition. In some collisions, seat belts are the only protective device. Wearing a seat belt during a collision can help reduce the risk of hitting objects inside the vehicle or being thrown out of the vehicle, and effectively protect the driver and occupants. Therefore, all people in vehicle should wear seat belts correctly. Airbags and seat belts can provide protection only for adults, they are not designed to protect infants and young children.

The airbag will generate considerable force at the moment of deployment. In order to avoid injury caused by deployment of the airbag, the driver and occupants must adopt the correct sitting posture, correctly wear the seat belt and adjust their seat position, never get too close to the airbag (such as sitting on the edge of the seat or tilting the body forward). For vehicles equipped with front seat side airbag and curtain shield side airbag (if equipped), ensure that the upper limbs are at a sufficient distance from the side of the vehicle to avoid injuring during deployment.

⚠ CAUTION

- The related parts of airbag will generate heat after deploying. Do not touch the related parts of airbag immediately to avoid injury.
- The airbag is a non-reusable device. Once the airbag is deployed, the related parts of airbag must be replaced.
- If the areas where the airbags are stored (such as the steering wheel and instrument panel) are damaged or cracked, please go to the authorized service station for replacement as soon as possible.
- The deployment and contraction of the airbag is completed in a short period of time, and cannot protect against the impact of a second impact that may occur subsequently.
- The airbag is neither designed for rear collision, slight frontal collision, nor for vehicle rolling over, and it does not work when the vehicle is braked in an emergency.
- The airbags release some smoke and dust after deploying. For people with asthma or other respiratory problems, respiratory system could be stimulated. Therefore, all people in vehicle should get out as soon as possible, or open windows to breathe fresh air and seek medical treatment if necessary.

⚠ WARNING

- The seat cover should not block side airbag (if equipped) during using, as in the event of an accident, the side airbag (if equipped) will not pop up after inflating, which will reduce protection for passengers.
- A soft, dry cloth or cloth dampened with water must be used to clean the airbag area. Avoid any fluid entering into the airbag, otherwise it may seriously affect the normal function of airbag.
- If there is water in vehicle, the airbag may be damaged. Even if there is no collision at this time, it may cause the airbag to deploy accidentally. Turn off the engine immediately and disconnect the negative battery cable. Do not try to start the engine. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Airbag indicator

The "  " red indicator on instrument cluster remains on when it is malfunctioning, which is used to alert the driver that airbag is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Airbag operating conditions

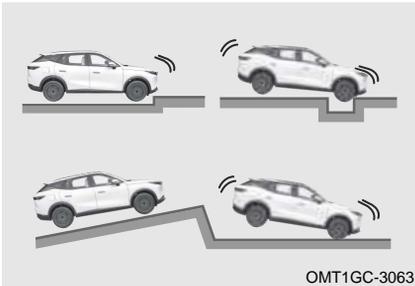
Deployment conditions of the airbag do not depend on driving speed of vehicle, but depend on the object, collision direction and vehicle deceleration conditions due to a collision. Airbags may be not deployed when impact of

4. DRIVING VEHICLE

collision is absorbed or dispersed into the body; However, the airbag can sometimes operate depending on the impact condition in an accident. Therefore, deployment conditions of the airbag should not be judged according to the damaged condition of the vehicle.

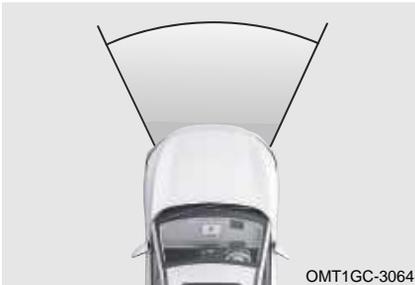
Even if the airbag is not deployed, a collision may damage the airbag in the vehicle. Airbag may not operate properly if damaged, and it will not be able to protect you and other occupants in the event of another collision, resulting in accidents and personal injuries. In order to ensure that the airbag can be deployed properly in an event of collision, please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

■ Conditions under which airbag may deploy other than a collision



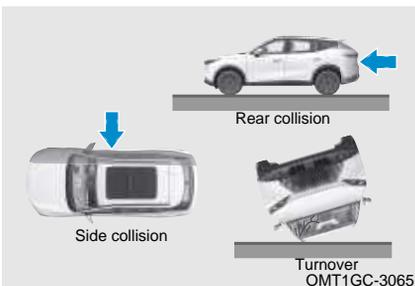
The driver frontal airbag, front passenger frontal airbag, driver knee airbag (if equipped) may deploy if an impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle.

■ Conditions under which airbag may deploy in a collision

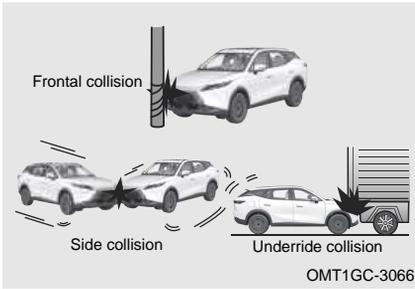


Operating conditions: In general, in an event of frontal collision, the driver frontal airbag, front passenger frontal airbag and driver knee airbag (if equipped) may deploy if the deceleration of vehicle exceeds the designed threshold level.

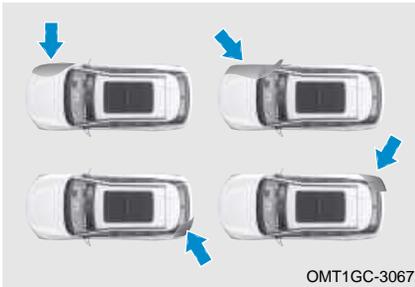
■ Conditions under which airbag may not deploy during a collision



The driver frontal airbag, front passenger frontal airbag and driver knee airbag (if equipped) may not deploy if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision.



The driver frontal airbag, front passenger frontal airbag and driver knee airbag (if equipped) may not deploy if the front of vehicle hits a telegraph pole, goes under a truck, or in inclined side collision.



The front seat side airbag, curtain side airbag (if equipped) and center airbag (if equipped) may not deploy if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from side, the rear part of the rear tyre or a side collision at certain angles to the vehicle.



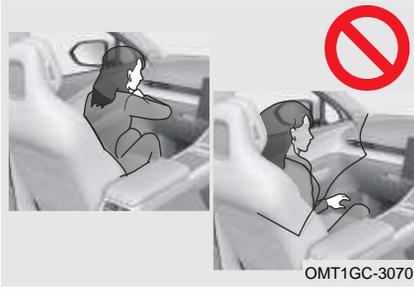
The front seat side airbag, curtain side airbag (if equipped) and center airbag (if equipped) may not deploy if the vehicle is subjected to a front or rear collision, turnover or low speed side collision.

Precautions for airbag

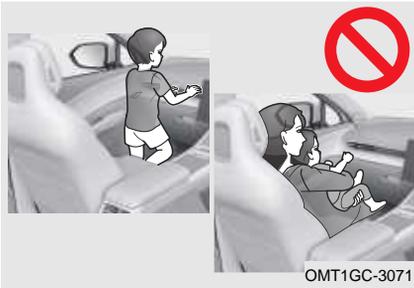


There should be no objects on deployment path of airbag. It is forbidden to place anything (such as mobile phone, etc.) between the occupant and the airbag. Never fix or place any object on or near the airbag cover. If there is an object between occupant and airbag, the airbag may not deploy according to designed path, or the airbag may push object into occupant's body, causing serious injury or even death.

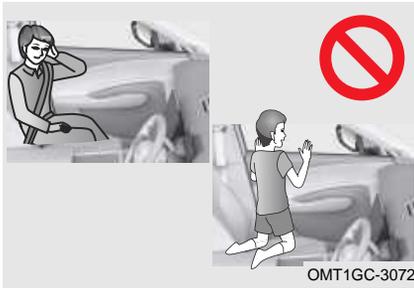
4. DRIVING VEHICLE



Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the instrument panel.



Do not allow a child to stand in front of the front passenger frontal airbag unit or sit on the knees of front passenger.



Do not lean against the door, A pillar, B pillar or C pillar.

Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seat toward the door or put their heads or hands outside the vehicle.



Do not attach anything to or lean anything against the areas such as the instrument panel, steering wheel and lower portion of the instrument panel. These items may be thrown out when driver frontal airbag or front passenger frontal airbag deploys.



Do not attach anything to areas such as the door, windshield glass, side door glass, A pillar, B pillar, C pillar, roof side rail and assist grip.

Do not strike or apply excessive force to the area of airbag components. Otherwise, it may cause airbag malfunction.

Replacement of airbag components

The related parts of the airbag must be replaced 10 years from the date of vehicle purchase. In order to make sure that the airbag can ensure your safety, please always contact the authorized service station to replace related parts of the airbag within the specified time.

Make sure that the new owner knows the airbag configuration and the replacement date of airbag in this vehicle when the vehicle is sold.

Modification and disposal of airbag components

Do not dispose of the vehicle or operate the following components without permission of the authorized service station, otherwise accidents and personal injuries may be caused:

1. Modification of vehicle suspension system.
2. Modification of vehicle front bumper, etc.
3. Modification of side doors or door protective panel and B-pillar protective panel, etc.
4. Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of airbags.
5. Repair, modification, removal or replacement of steering wheel, instrument cluster, instrument panel and seats.

4-6. Event Data Recorder (EDR)

Event Data Recorder (EDR)

This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder. The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short time, usually 5 seconds or less.

The EDR in this car is designed to record data related to the following in the event of traffic accidents or collision-like situations:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether the driver and passenger seatbelts were fastened or tensioned.

4. DRIVING VEHICLE

- The driver's use of the accelerator or brake pedal.
- The travel speed of the car.

This creates a better understanding about the circumstances in which traffic accidents, injuries and damage occur. The EDR only records data when a non-trivial collision situation occurs. The EDR does not record any data during normal driving conditions. Similarly, the system never registers who is driving the vehicle, or the geographic location of the accident or collision-like situation. However, other parties, such as the police, could use the recorded data in combination with the type of personally identifiable information routinely collected after a traffic accident. Special equipment and access to either the car or the EDR is required to be able to interpret the registered data.

5-1. Driving Assist		Rear Collision Warning (RCW) System (If Equipped)	174
Caution.....	159		
5-2. Speed Limit Assist System (SLA)		Rear Cross Traffic Alert (-RCTA) System (If Equipped)	174
Speed Limit Assist System (SLA) (If Equipped)	160	Rear Cross Traffic Brake (RCTB) System (If Equipped)	174
5-3. Speed Limit System			
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) System	160	5-6. Intelligent Cruise Control System	
Active Speed Limit (ASL) (If Equipped).....	165	Traffic Jam Assist (TJA) System/Integrated Cruise Assist (ICA) System (If Equipped)	175
Intelligent Speed Control System (SCF) (If Equipped)	166	5-7. Driving Safety Assist System	
5-4. Lane Assist System		Secondary Collision Mitigation System (MCB) (If Equipped).....	178
Lane Assist System (If Equipped)	167	Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)	178
Lane Departure Warning (LDW) (If Equipped).....	167	Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) System/ Front Collision Warning (FCW) System (If Equipped)	180
Lane Departure Prevention (LDP) (If Equipped)	168	5-8. Driver Monitoring System (DMS)	
Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) (If Equipped)	170	Driver Monitoring System (DMS) (If Equipped).....	183
5-5. Blind Spot Detection Assist System		5-9. Parking Assist System	
Blind Spot Detection Assist System (If Equipped)	171	Panoramic View Monitor System (AVM)	184
Door Opening Warning (DOW) System (If Equipped)	173	Parking Radar System	188
		Parking assist system (If Equipped)	190

DRIVING ASSIST

Traceback Reversing System (RA) (If Equipped)	194	Charging Device	214
Remote Parking Assist (If Equipped)	197	Charging Operation	218
5-10. Braking Force Control System		AC charging socket electronic lock.....	222
Electronic Stability Control System	201	Releasing Charging Gun Manually (Only for AC Charging).....	224
Hill Descent Control (HDC) System	203	Charging Precautions	224
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	204	External Discharging Function (If Equipped).....	226
Extended Function	205	Low-speed Pedestrian Warning Sound	229
5-11. Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle System (PHEV)		5-12. Data Privacy	
Power Battery	206	Driver Drowsiness and Attention Warning (DDAW)	229
New Energy	209	Advanced Driver Assistance System (ADAS)	229
Energy Recovery Intensity	210	Emergency call (eCall)	230
Operating Mode	211		

5-1. Driving Assist

Caution

The Advanced Driving Assistance Systems specified in this manual are supplementary systems, not autopilots, and do not provide full autonomy to the vehicle. The efficiency of the auxiliary system depends on many factors, therefore, the manufacturer does not guarantee the activity of all systems during the operation of the vehicle.

The driver must:

- Maintain direct and continuous control of the vehicle.
- Monitor traffic conditions.
- Respond promptly to changes in traffic situation, make independent decisions and implement them.
- Comply with traffic rules, including speed and distance from other vehicles

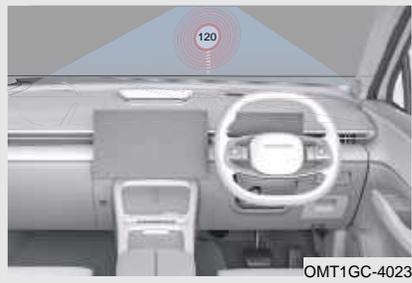
All decisions and responsibilities for driving rest entirely with the driver, who must remain focused and ready to intervene at all times.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

5-2. Speed Limit Assist System (SLA)

Speed Limit Assist System (SLA) (If Equipped)

SLA detects speed limit sign information on road ahead and combines the information with speed limit information of navigation system, and use the final speed limit information to remind the driver to pay attention to the various current road speed limit regulations in the form of image, sound, etc., to keep legal speed and observe local traffic laws.



After SLA detects speed limit sign information on road ahead and combines the information with speed limit information of navigation system, "⊖" indicator in instrument cluster comes on, if the speed exceeds current speed limit for 5km/h, prompt sound will sound 1 time.

READ

SLA can be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".

Function limit

■ SLA may not be able to recognize in following situations

1. Faded signs.
2. Signs on curve.
3. Rotated or damaged signs.
4. High signs on highway.
5. Signs that is covered fully or partly, or that the position can not be found easily.
6. Signs covered by frost, snow, dust fully or partly.

WARNING

SLA based on the function of front view multi-function camera is affected by weather and light, so the function is not appropriate for all conditions.

5-3. Speed Limit System

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) System

Adaptive cruise control system can maintain the speed set by driver and can also follow the vehicle at a set safe distance.

Entering ACC system



1. When activation conditions are met, vehicle speed is higher than 9 mph (15 km/h) or there is a vehicle to follow, the vehicle will automatically enter the pre-cruising state, and indicator on instrument cluster comes on;
2. During pre-cruising, when the vehicle speed is higher than 9 mph (15 km/h) or there is a vehicle to follow, press steering wheel middle left roller button to activate ACC, indicator on instrument cluster comes on.
3. During cruising, when the vehicle speed is higher than 9 mph (15 km/h) or there is a vehicle to follow, press steering wheel middle left roller button to set the current vehicle speed as the cruise speed.

■ Suspending ACC system

During cruising, press middle roller button or depress brake pedal, ACC system will suspend; Roll the roller upward or depress accelerator pedal to activate ACC system again.

■ Exiting ACC system

When one or more of the following situations occur in cruising process, ACC system will exit:

1. Front compartment cover is opened.
2. Short press middle roller button.
3. Depress brake pedal.
4. Driver door is opened.
5. Driver seat belt is not fastened.
6. Apply electric parking.
7. Anti-lock brake system operates.
8. Gear position is in a position other than D.
9. Automatic emergency braking system operates.
10. Turn on HDC system.
11. Electronic stability program system operates.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

12. Electronic stability control system is not turned on.

13. Driver depresses accelerator pedal for more than 15 minutes.

■ Speed setting

During cruising, rotate steering wheel left roller upward or downward, cruise speed will increase or decrease by 3 mph (5 km/h).

READ

- For ACC system, the lowest speed setting is 9 mph (15 km/h) and the highest speed setting is 93 mph (150 km/h).
- Speed will be slightly lower than set speed when driving uphill, and will be slightly higher than set speed when driving downhill.

Adaptive cruise control system activation conditions

The following conditions must be met at the same time to activate adaptive cruise control system:

1. Gear position is in D position.
2. Front compartment cover is not opened.
3. Active speed limit is not turned on.
4. Driver door is closed.
5. Driver seat belt is fastened.
6. Parking brake is not applied.
7. Anti-lock brake system is not activated.
8. Electronic stability program system is turned on.
9. Electronic stability program system is not activated.
10. Hill descent control system is not turned on.
11. Brake pedal is not depressed (during driving).
12. Vehicle speed is higher than 9 mph (15 km/h) or an object is recognized in front.

Following clearance

After ACC system is activated, rotate steering wheel left roller leftward or rightward (decrease to leftward and increase to rightward) to adjust the following clearance.

 READ

- Following clearance changes based on speed and increases with speed improving.
- In minimum clearance mode, the distance between the vehicle and vehicle ahead will quite small during following at low speed. For safety, select maximum clearance mode to follow vehicle ahead on slippery road.
- During following vehicle ahead and decreasing, electronic stability program system continuously performs brake and motor will generate operation sound when rotating, this is normal and please drive at ease.

 WARNING

- Please note that any drive behavior must confirm all traffic regulations.
- The driver must control vehicle and operate as needed during the whole driving process to avoid danger.

Overtaking

Depress accelerator pedal to exceed set speed in cruising process. After accelerator pedal is released, the control state will return to previous state. During overtaking, if the vehicle is too close to vehicle ahead, instrument cluster will show a pop-up box accompanied with urgent warning sound to remind driver to avoid.

Curve speed control

Decrease the speed when vehicle enters curve in cruising process, which help driver to drive through curve safely.

 WARNING

- The driver must control vehicle, drive through curve as slowly as possible in the whole driving process.
- While entering a curve, due to limitation of detection target for sensor, vehicle ahead on the same driving route may not be detected in time, which requires the driver to be ready to take over the control of the vehicle at any time.

Stopping and starting function

During following vehicle ahead in ACC mode, vehicle ahead decreases to stop, the vehicle also decreases to stop, after stopping:

1. Vehicle ahead starts to drive away within 3 seconds and the vehicle starts automatically to follow vehicle ahead.
2. If vehicle ahead stops for more than 3 seconds and starts within 3 seconds to 10 minutes, driver needs to depress accelerator pedal slightly to activate ACC.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

3. When vehicle stops within 10 minutes, driver unfastens seat belt or opens driver door, EPB will be activated automatically for parking.
4. When vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes, the ACC will exit, and EPB will be activated automatically for parking.

WARNING

During following vehicle ahead, always pay attention to whether the instrument cluster displays the vehicle target in front. If the instrument cluster does not display the target in front, it means that target in front of ACC system has been lost, and the vehicle will start to accelerate according to set speed.

Precautions for adaptive cruise control

1. Adaptive cruise control system can not violate laws of physics and has certain limitations. Driver must always keep control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.
2. If the vehicle is extremely close to vehicle on adjacent lanes, adaptive cruise control system may select the vehicle as following target.
3. Adaptive cruise control system can not respond to stationary objects and vehicles, crosswise vehicles, oncoming vehicles, pedestrians, bicycles and animals.
4. When stopping vehicle briefly by adaptive cruise control system, driver must confirm that there are no obstacles or other traffic participants such as pedestrians, bicycles and animals in front of the vehicle.
5. When adaptive cruise control function is malfunctioning, "  " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on. At this time, adaptive cruise control function fails, please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
6. During adaptive cruise control controls vehicle, never inadvertently step on accelerator pedal, otherwise, adaptive cruise control will not apply brake to vehicle, driver should always be ready to brake actively to ensure the safety of the vehicle.
7. Adaptive cruise control system has a limited brake time reaction; if vehicle ahead occurs sudden brake, another driver cuts in front of the vehicle, the vehicle cuts behind a preceding vehicle, adaptive cruise control system may not respond or react to vehicle ahead too slow, in this case, driver should take over the vehicle control in time.
8. The distance to the vehicle ahead, adjacent lane conditions, and target type displayed on instrument cluster may be different from the actual situation. Driver must observe the vehicle and real road conditions in real time; Driver should adjust the proper distance from vehicle ahead and vehicle speed based on traffic flow, weather condition and other actual road conditions, and is responsible for ensuring that the vehicle can stop safely at any time.

In inclement weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.), adaptive cruise control system may not recognize a vehicle ahead. In this case, adaptive cruise control system should be turned off.

9. Adaptive cruise control system is suitable for use on highways and roads in good condition. It is not recommended for use on urban roads, narrow roads, mountain roads, hills, tunnels, etc. If using adaptive cruise control system on curves, target vehicle ahead may be lost or target selection is delayed due to limitation of sensor detection range. In this case, adaptive cruise control system will control vehicle to accelerate to set speed.
10. During the process of following the vehicle ahead to stop, ACC system may not be able to recognize the end of the vehicle, but the lower or upper part of vehicle (such as rear axle of truck that has higher chassis, upper part of lower flatbed trailer). In these cases, system cannot ensure a proper stopping distance or even lead to collision. Therefore, driver must keep a watch on vehicle and be ready to take over vehicle control anytime during this process.
11. Camera sensor is installed behind windshield. Please note that view of sensor should not be covered by pollutants, and front or surrounding areas should not be modified. When sensor is completely covered by snow, ACC function will be exited. Sensors may also be affected by vibration or collision, and system performance may be reduced or its function fails. In this case, please go to authorized service station for recalibration of sensors as soon as possible.

Precautions mentioned above do not cover all circumstances that may affect system normal operation. System function may fail to bring the expected effect due to other reasons. Driver must always take full responsibility for vehicle control anytime.

Active Speed Limit (ASL) (If Equipped)

Driver drives vehicle at set limit speed.

Usage methods

■ Entering active speed limit

Turn vehicle power to ON mode and press " " button to enter pre-speed limit state, " " indicator on instrument cluster remains on:

Method 1: During pre-speed limit state, vehicle speed is lower than 18 mph (30 km/h), press " " button to enter speed limit state, " " indicator on instrument cluster remains on, set vehicle speed is 18 mph (30 km/h) by default;

Method 2: During pre-speed limit state, and vehicle speed is within 18 mph (30 km/h) to 124 mph (200 km/h), press " " button to set current speed as

5. DRIVING ASSIST

limit speed to enter speed limit state, " " indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

■ Exiting active speed limit

Press " " button to exit speed limit state, enter pre-cruising state, " " indicator on instrument cluster flashes.

Press " " button to exit speed limit state, " " indicator on instrument cluster goes off.

■ Speed setting

Roll steering wheel left roller upward, and set speed will increase.

Roll steering wheel left roller downward, and set speed will decrease.

Overtaking

In speed limit process, in order to overtake or in other operation condition, fully depress accelerator pedal to enter pre-speed limit state, " " indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

After overtaking, if vehicle speed is higher than previous set limit speed, it enters pre-speed limit state, " " indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

After overtaking, if vehicle speed is less than previous set limit speed, it enters speed limit state, " " indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Intelligent Speed Control System (SCF) (If Equipped)

When the vehicle is in cruising state (ACC or TJA/ICA), it can adjust vehicle speed by receiving speed limit sign information on road ahead detected by SLA system and combining the information with speed limit information of navigation system.

READ

If the driver does not confirm during the first pop-up window, another pop-up window will appear after 1 minute; thereafter, no more pop-up window will be shown until the new speed limit sign appears (the new speed limit sign is not the same as the previous one).

Activation conditions of intelligent speed control system

The following conditions must be met at the same time to activate intelligent speed control system:

1. SLA is turned on.
2. 18 mph (30 km/h) \leq Speed limit value of SLA system \leq 74 mph (120 km/h).
3. ACC system is activated.

4. Set speed of ACC system > Speed limit value of SLA system or speed limit value of SLA system - cruising set speed of the vehicle \geq 6 mph (10 km/h).

5-4. Lane Assist System

Lane Assist System (If Equipped)

Lane assist system includes LDW, LDP and ELK, which can assist driver to reduce traffic accident due to lane departure, improving driving safety.

READ

- Keep front view multi-function camera free from obstructions (such as bird droppings, insects and ice, etc.).
- Lane line captured by camera: It can detect white solid line, white dotted line, yellow solid line, yellow dotted line and double solid line lanes.
- The system may not operate in cold and bad weather conditions, such as rain, snow or fog and high contrast lighting will affect the sensor.
- The system may not operate when driving on cement road.
- The system may not operate when driving in road construction area.
- The system may not operate when driving on flooded or muddy roads.
- The system may not work when driving on sharp turns or narrow roads.
- The system will only work normally on the roads with two clear lane lines.
- When only single-sided lane line is detected, the system alarm stability decreases.
- If sensor is disturbed, the system may not work.
- Sensors may misidentify temporary construction markings on the road, etc. and give false alarm by mistake.
- If your vehicle suspension kit is not approved by us, the lane assist system may not operate properly.

WARNING

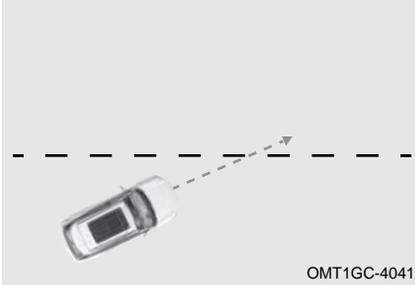
- The driver must control vehicle and operate as needed during the whole driving process to avoid danger.
- Lane assist system only offers assistance to the driver. It may not work properly under all driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.

Lane Departure Warning (LDW) (If Equipped)

LDW detects lane line by front view multi-function camera. The system sends an alarm when wheel rolls over lane line and vehicle departs from its lane.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

Activating lane departure warning



When vehicle speed is no less than 40 mph (65 km/h) and lane line is recognized, LDW enters standby status.

When vehicle speed is no less than 40 mph (65 km/h) and the vehicle departs from one lane line, LDW is activated.

When vehicle speed decreases from 40 mph (65 km/h) to 37 mph (60 km/h), LDW enters limit status.

Lane departure warning indicator

When function is turned on/limited, "  " gray indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When it is in standby status, "  " green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When it is activated, "  " green indicator on instrument cluster flashes.

When there is a fault, "  " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Function limit

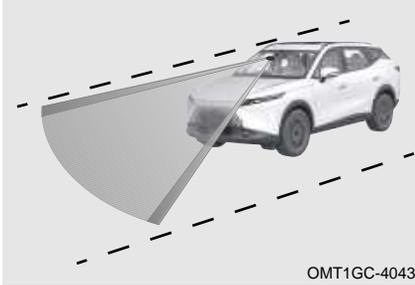
■ LDW may not work properly in the following conditions:

1. When changing lanes.
2. When turning with high speed.
3. When depressing accelerator pedal with excess force.
4. When depressing brake pedal with excess force.
5. When turning on the hazard light.
6. When turning on departure side turn signal light.
7. When driving on roads with tight curves.
8. When lane line is too thin, broken, blurred or departure side has no lane line.

Lane Departure Prevention (LDP) (If Equipped)

LDP monitors the relative position between vehicle and lane line by front view multi-function camera in real-time. When the vehicle is about to deviate from the lane, it controls the lateral movement and assists driver to keep the vehicle in the original lane.

Activating lane departure prevention



When vehicle speed is no less than 40 mph (65 km/h) and lane line is recognized, LDP enters standby status.

When vehicle speed is no less than 40 mph (65 km/h) and the vehicle departs from one lane line, LDP is activated.

When vehicle speed decreases from 40 mph (65 km/h) to below 37 mph (60 km/h), LDW enters limit status.

CAUTION

- Driver performs an active control for vehicle when meeting a large curve.
- Driver performs an active control for vehicle when meeting some conditions such as lane increase, lane merger, etc.
- Driver performs an active control for vehicle when meeting complex traffic environment (such as intersection, heavy traffic road).

Lane departure prevention indicator

When function is turned on/limited, " " gray indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When it is in standby status, " " green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When it is activated, " " green indicator on instrument cluster flashes.

When there is a fault, " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Function limit

■ LDP may not work properly in the following conditions:

1. When changing lanes.
2. When lane is too narrow.
3. When lane is too wide.
4. When turn signal light is turned on.
5. When lane line is lost.
6. When the braking force is too large.
7. When turning with high speed.
8. When hazard lights are turned on.
9. When EPS system is not ready (such as malfunction).
10. When ABS system or ESP system is activated.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

11. When traffic jam assist system/cruise assist system is activated.
12. Steering wheel is operated by driver when LDP applies corrective steering intervention.

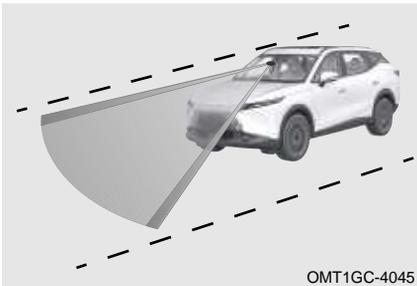
■ Under the following situations, do not use LDP. Failure to do so may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious:

1. When driving on low-quality section.
2. When driving on road construction site.
3. When driving on roads with more curves.
4. At night and when the surrounding light is dark.
5. When driving vehicle in a sporty style.
6. In bad weathers (such as rain, snow, fog).

Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) (If Equipped)

ELK system uses front view multi-function camera and rear corner radar to detect in real time that the vehicle departs from oncoming or overtaking vehicles in adjacent lanes, if so, the vehicle continues to lateral movement or the system control lateral movement if necessary, which can keep the vehicle in the original lane and assist driver to reduce traffic accident due to lane departure, improving driving safety.

Note: ELK is turned on by default after the vehicle is powered on.



When vehicle speed is no less than 40 mph (65 km/h) and vehicle target is monitored, ELK enters standby status.

When vehicle speed is no less than 40 mph (65 km/h) and vehicle target is monitored, ELK is activated.

When vehicle speed decreases from above 40 mph (65 km/h) to below 37 mph (60 km/h), ELK enters limit status.

CAUTION

- Driver performs an active control for vehicle when meeting a large curve.
- Driver performs an active control for vehicle when meeting some conditions such as lane increase, lane merger, etc.
- Driver performs an active control for vehicle when meeting complex traffic environment (such as intersection, heavy traffic road).

Emergency lane keeping indicator

When function is turned on/limited, "  " gray indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When it is in standby status, "  " green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When it is activated, "  " red indicator on instrument cluster flashes.

When there is a fault, "  " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Function limit

■ ELK may not work properly in the following conditions:

1. When changing lanes.
2. When lane is too narrow.
3. When lane is too wide.
4. When lane line is lost.
5. When the braking force is too large.
6. When turning with high speed.
7. When depressing accelerator pedal with excess force.
8. When hazard lights are turned on.
9. When double solid line lanes are detected and turn signal light is turned on.
10. When EPS system is not ready (such as malfunction).
11. When ABS system or ESP system is activated.
12. When TJA/ICA system is activated.
13. Steering wheel is operated by driver when ELK system applies corrective steering intervention.

■ Under the following situations, do not use ELK. Failure to do so may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury:

1. When driving on low-quality section.
2. When driving on road construction site.
3. When driving on roads with more curves.
4. At night and when the surrounding light is dark.
5. When driving vehicle in a sporty style.
6. In bad weathers (such as rain, snow, fog).

5-5. Blind Spot Detection Assist System

Blind Spot Detection Assist System (If Equipped)

Blind spot detection assist system is used to monitor presence of moving vehicles in left and right rear areas of your vehicle and inform driver related information to remind the driver for driving safety and lane-changing safety.

5. DRIVING ASSIST



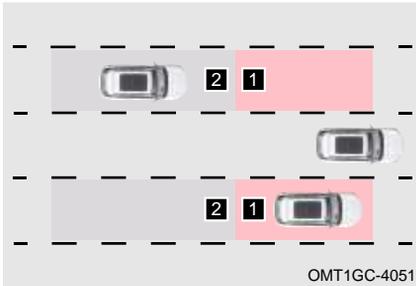
Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and turn on BSD, DOW, RCW, Rear Cross Traffic Alert, RCTB or Reversing Emergency Brake through Audio System - Vehicle Setting - Assist Driving.

Note: BSD and LCA share blind spot detection switch.

WARNING

Blind spot detection assist system just offers assistance to you. It may not work properly under all driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.

Activating Blind Spot Detection (BSD) / Lane Change Assist (LCA)



When speed is no less than 9 mph (15 km/h), blind spot detection system is activated; When speed decreases from above 9 mph (15 km/h) to 6 mph (10 km/h), BSD enters pre-activating.

- 1** Detection area of blind spot detection system
- 2** Vehicle approaches detection area of blind spot detection system

Level I: If a vehicle enters detection area and meets alarm conditions, level alarm I is triggered. "" yellow indicator on rear view mirror remains on, "" green indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

Level II: On base of level I, turn on the turn signal light in the same side. After level alarm II is triggered, "" yellow indicator on rear view mirror blinks, "" yellow indicator on instrument cluster blinks, alarm sounds.

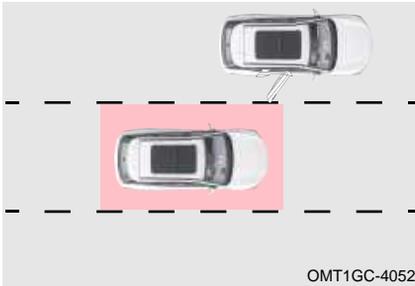
⚠ CAUTION

- When lots of snow or ice accumulates on rear bumper and near radar sensor, or if drive on snowy road for a long time, blind spot detection assist system may not work.
- When towing or attaching accessories to the rear of vehicle (such as a bicycle carrier), turn off blind spot detection assist system. Otherwise, radar radio waves will be affected, causing system work abnormally.
- BSD/LCA may detect stationary objects on or near a road (such as guardrails, tunnels, side walls, and parked vehicles) to turn on warning light.

Blind spot detection system indicator

During operation, level alarm I "🟢" green indicator in instrument cluster remains on; level alarm II "🟡" yellow indicator in instrument cluster blinks.

When there is a fault, "🟡" yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Door Opening Warning (DOW) System (If Equipped)

When vehicle power is in OFF/ACC/ON mode and the vehicle is stationary, if blind spot detection assist system detects approaching vehicles on left and right sides of the vehicle and any door is opened, DOW sounds an alarm to remind the driver/occupant to pay attention to following vehicle when exiting to avoid collision.

Level I: If a vehicle enters detection area and meets alarm conditions, level alarm I is triggered. "🟡" yellow indicator on corresponding side rear view mirror remains on, indicator on corresponding side rear door trim panel remains on.

Level II: On base of level I, open the door. After level alarm II is triggered, "🟡" yellow indicator on corresponding side rear mirror blinks, indicator on corresponding side rear door trim panel comes on, alarm sounds.

Function limit

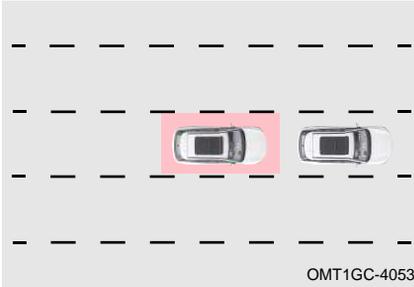
■ DOW may not work properly in the following conditions:

1. The vehicle speed is higher than 0 mph (0 km/h).
2. After switching vehicle power to OFF mode for 5 minutes.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

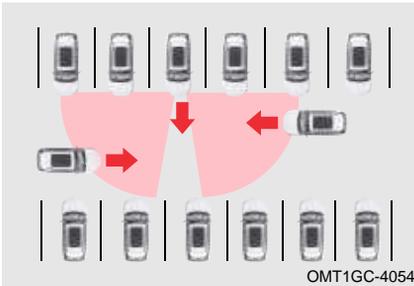
- When turning vehicle power to OFF mode and enters arming mode within 5 minutes.

Rear Collision Warning (RCW) System (If Equipped)



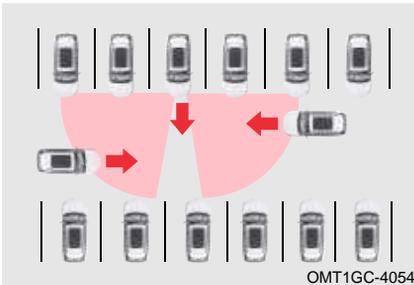
With vehicle power in ON mode and vehicle speed higher than 9 mph (15 km/h), if a following vehicle quickly approaches the vehicle, meter gives an alarm to remind that there is a approaching vehicle from behind.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) System (If Equipped)



When vehicle power is turned to ON mode and vehicle is reversing (gear position is in R position), blind spot detection assist system detects that vehicles are approaching from left/right sides, "⚠️" yellow indicator on rear view mirror blinks and alarm sounds.

Rear Cross Traffic Brake (RCTB) System (If Equipped)



RCTB warns and assists driver in braking when the vehicle power is turned to ON mode, all doors are closed, the steering wheel angle is less than the threshold, the vehicle is backed up (gear position is in R position), the vehicle speed is no higher than 9 mph (15 km/h) and a vehicle or pedestrian crossing the road is encountered when exiting a perpendicular/oblique parking space. Help drivers avoid collisions with vehicles or pedestrians crossing the road, especially if the driver's view is blocked by vehicles parked nearby.

⚠ CAUTION

- Never modify the area around sensor in any way. After modification, it is recommended to turn off RCTB, otherwise the system may apply unnecessary braking.
- Certain scenarios can affect and weaken the detection of sensor, and the system may perform unnecessary warning and braking or fail to detect all obstacles.
- RCTB is an assist function, which can not violate laws of physics and has certain limitations. Driver must always keep control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.

5-6. Intelligent Cruise Control System**Traffic Jam Assist (TJA) System/Integrated Cruise Assist (ICA) System (If Equipped)**

TJA/ICA detects lane line through the front view camera to perform vertical and horizontal control for vehicle, providing driving assistance and reducing driver's workload under monotonous driving environment or busy traffic. This system also extends the intelligent avoidance system.

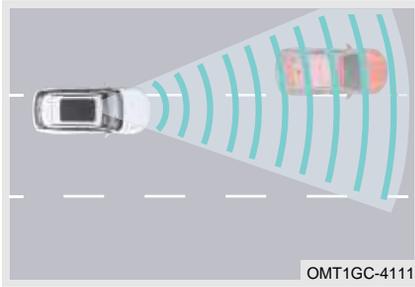
Activating traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system

Activate/exit function: When TJA/ICA is in pre-activating or activated state, short press steering wheel middle left roller to activate/exit TJA/ICA;

Mode switching function: When ACC is in pre-cruising or cruising state, or TJA/ICA is in pre-activating or activated state, short press steering wheel middle left roller to switch between ACC and TJA/ICA modes.

If the TJA/ICA activation conditions are not met, "  " gray indicator on instrument cluster remains on; If the TJA/ICA activation conditions are met, "  " blue indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

5. DRIVING ASSIST



TJA: When vehicle speed is lower than 37 mph (60 km/h), vehicle will be kept near lane center. If no lane line is detected, the vehicle follows vehicle ahead as driving target. If neither lane line nor target vehicle is detected, TJA will be turned off.

ICA: When vehicle speed is 37 mph (60 km/h) to 80 mph (130 km/h), vehicle will be kept near lane center. If no lane line is detected, ICA will be turned off regardless of whether there is a target vehicle ahead.

READ

When the vehicle uses the TJA/ICA function for the first time, and the lane lines on both sides are clear, turn on TJA/ICA function and drive the vehicle in a straight line within the lane lines for a certain period of time (with slight differences in the duration of individual vehicle), TJA/ICA function will automatically perform self-learning. During the self-learning period, the lateral control parameters will dynamically adapt and adjust until the optimal state is reached, and then self-learning is completed. *Note:* Before self-learning is completed, the centering effect of TJA/ICA function may not be obvious, and the deviation correction effect of lane assist system may not be obvious.

Traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system indicator

When it is pre-activated, "  " gray indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When it is activated, "  " blue indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When there is a fault, "  " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Function limit

■ TJA/ICA may not work properly in the following conditions:

1. Hands off steering wheel.
2. Turn signal lights are turned on.
3. Hazard lights are turned on.
4. Lane line is not detected.
5. Overly narrow or wide lanes.
6. The vehicle speed is less than 1 mph (1 km/h).
7. Too small lane curve radius.
8. Driver rotates steering wheel actively.

9. Any exiting condition for adaptive cruise control system exists.

⚠ WARNING

- The driver must control vehicle and operate as needed during the whole driving process to avoid danger.
- TJA/ICA just offers assistance to you. It may not work properly under some driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.

Suggest to use traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system

When TJA/ICA monitors vehicle speed is higher than 37 mph (60 km/h), the current lane lines are clear and persistent, and ACC is in cruising state, "120" blue indicator on instrument cluster remains on. After a certain period of time, the instrument cluster pop-up window prompts "Road conditions are good, we suggest you to turn on Intelligent Cruise Control system".

Exiting reminder for traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system

When TJA/ICA exits from the activated state, the system issues an alarm sound and the instrument cluster pop-up window prompts "Intelligent Cruise Control system has exited, please note" to inform the driver that the function has exited.



Turn vehicle power to ON mode. Turn on Integrated Cruise Assist Exit Warning through Audio System - Settings - Driver Assistance.

If you feel that the exiting reminder will interfere with driving, you can turn off this reminder function according to your preference.

Precautions for traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system

1. TJA/ICA system is a driving assist system, which cannot violate laws of physics and has certain limitations. Driver must always keep control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.
2. Longitudinal control of TJA/ICA system is performed by ACC, lateral control of TJA/ICA is performed by LKA, all precautions for ACC and LKA are also applicable to the system.
3. TJA/ICA system do not provide automatic driving function and does not allow hand off driving. Under the conditions such as turning, crossing, merging and vehicle ahead cuts in, driver should control vehicle at all times to ensure safety.

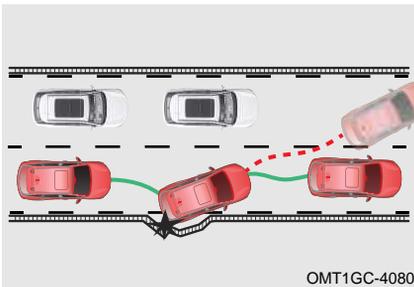
5. DRIVING ASSIST

4. TJA/ICA system performance is affected by weather, illumination and lane line clarity. Under the conditions of backlight, sunset, night, snow and ice on the road surface and unclear lane lines due to road wear, the performance will be significantly reduced or even lost.
5. When traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system is malfunctioning, "  " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on, at this time, traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system will not work, please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Precautions mentioned above do not cover all circumstances that may affect system normal operation. System function may fail to bring the expected effect due to other reasons. Driver must always take full responsibility for vehicle control anytime.

5-7. Driving Safety Assist System

Secondary Collision Mitigation System (MCB) (If Equipped)



MCB detects that the vehicle has been involved in a collision, ESP system performs active braking to slow down the vehicle and prevent a secondary collision. During the braking process, the vehicle can still maintain control, further ensuring the safety of yourself and pedestrians.

Function limit

■ In the following conditions, MCB system may not work properly:

1. When the airbag system has malfunctions.
2. When the ESP system has malfunctions.
3. When ESP system is turned off.

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Tyre pressure monitoring system is an active safety configuration and can monitor pressure and temperature of tyre in real-time and the information can be checked through information display area. When tyre pressure is too low or temperature is too high, tyre pressure monitoring system alarms.



When vehicle speed is not lower than 15 mph (25 km/h), if TPMS has not received radio-frequency signal from one or more sensors after several minutes, TPMS will send system malfunction warning, "  " yellow indicator on instrument cluster will blink for tens of seconds and then remains on, "Abnormal Tyre Pressure, Check" will be displayed for several seconds and then turned off, which can be checked on tyre pressure display screen.

READ

Even if vehicle is equipped with tyre pressure monitoring system, check if tyre inflation pressure and appearance are normal before driving. Please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair as necessary.

Low pressure warning

When tyre pressure is 160 ~ 220 kpa and speed is not lower than 15 mph (25 km/h) for a period of time, system will send a low pressure warning, corresponding wheel symbol will blink, current tyre pressure value will be displayed and "  " yellow indicator in instrument cluster will remain on.

When vehicle power is turned to ON from OFF and tyre pressure is lower than 200 kpa, system will send a low pressure warning, corresponding wheel symbol will blink, current tyre pressure value will be displayed and "  " yellow indicator in instrument cluster will remain on.

When low pressure warning occurs, please inflate the tyre to 220 kpa as soon as possible. After the vehicle is driven at a speed not less than 15 mph (25 km/h) for a period of time, low pressure warning will be automatically canceled.

CAUTION

Low tyre pressure will increase fuel consumption and aggravate tyre wear (-serious tyre wear may cause a risk of tyre blowout), inspect causes of tyre air leakage. Please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible as needed.

High temperature warning

When tyre temperature is higher than 85°C and speed is not less than 15 mph (25 km/h) for a period of time, system will send a high temperature warning, corresponding wheel symbol will blink, current tyre temperature value will be displayed and "  " yellow indicator in instrument cluster will remain on.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

When vehicle power is turned to ON from OFF and tyre temperature is higher than 85°C, system will send a high temperature warning, corresponding wheel symbol will blink, current tyre temperature value will be displayed and "  " yellow indicator on instrument cluster will remain on.

When high temperature warning occurs, after tyre temperature is lower than 80°C and the vehicle is driven at a speed no less than 15 mph (25 km/h) for a period of time, high temperature warning will be automatically canceled.

CAUTION

When high temperature warning occurs, stop driving at once to cool down tires naturally. Do not cool it down by pouring cold water, otherwise, tyre may be damaged, causing an accident. Please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible as needed.

Function limit

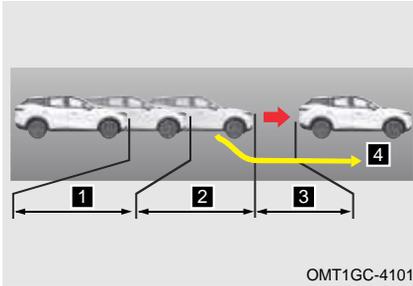
■ Tyre pressure monitoring system may send a system malfunction warning in the following conditions:

1. Configuration learning of tyre pressure monitoring system is not performed after replacing wheels (spare tyre included).
2. If tyre pressure sensor or other components have been damaged, please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair as necessary.
3. Sensor may be affected due to electromagnetic shielding caused by installing tyre chains, affecting tyre pressure monitoring system proper operation.
4. The tyre pressure monitoring system may not work properly due to interference of electronic equipment (over standard equipment) installed on vehicle, resulting false alarm.
5. TPMS may not operate due to radio interference; And it may be interfered temporarily due to strong electromagnetic radio signals with same frequency (433 MHz).

Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) System/Front Collision Warning (FCW) System (If Equipped)

When vehicle is about to hit a vehicle or pedestrian ahead, automatic emergency braking system and front collision warning system work together, sounding an alarm to remind driver, if driver cannot respond quickly enough, vehicle will brake automatically, reducing loss from collision.

Activating automatic emergency braking system/front collision warning system



- 1** Start pre-warning before impacting.
- 2** Start braking partly before impacting.
- 3** Start emergency braking before impacting.
- 4** If driver reacts correctly (for example, avoid a collision by steering), the following emergency braking is canceled.

READ

Some configurations only work on vehicle targets, not pedestrians or cyclists.

CAUTION

- When vehicle speed is lower than 18 mph (30 km/h), FCW system does not send an alarm; When speed is higher than 52 mph (85 km/h), FCW does not sound an alarm for static target ahead.
- Operating speed range of AEB is 4 mph to 38 mph (4 - 62 km/h) for static vehicle target (4 mph to 29mph (4 - 48 km/h) for some models); Operating speed range of AEB is 4 mph to 52 mph (4 - 85 km/h) for moving vehicle target; Operating speed range of AEB is 4 mph to 40 mph (4 - 65 km/h) for pedestrians and cyclists (not support for some models).
- Driver needs to ensure that seat belts have been fastened, doors are closed. Failure to do so, AEB system does not work.
- Turn on electronic stability program system, front collision warning system and automatic emergency braking system. Otherwise, front collision warning system and automatic emergency braking system do not work.
- " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on, please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Driver needs to take over vehicle because vehicle does not keep stationary state when vehicle is braked automatically to stop.
- During automatic emergency braking system is activated, driver quickly rotate steering wheel or depress accelerator pedal deeply, automatic emergency braking system will exit.

WARNING

- The driver must control vehicle and operate as needed during the whole driving process to avoid danger.
- Automatic emergency braking system just offers assistance to you. It may not work properly under all driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.
- The vehicle targets that can be detected by automatic emergency braking system include passenger vehicles, buses, trucks. For some vehicles, such as cement tank trucks, special vehicles with higher or lower chassis, the system has certain limitations in detecting.
- Automatic emergency braking system will work when it detects some characteristics consistent with normal human walking (such as head swing, arm swing, leg swing). Automatic emergency braking system detects pedestrians who across the vehicle' s lane, but automatic emergency braking system does not detect pedestrians who walk alongside the lane, who are around a corner or who are blocked by any other objects.
- Automatic emergency braking system will work when it detects body and bicycle contour information as well as normal cycling movements. Automatic emergency braking system does not detect an oncoming cyclist as target.
- Automatic emergency braking system is not always capable of detecting vehicles, cyclists or pedestrians, and automatic emergency braking system may generate unnecessary braking automatically or not work for a variety of reasons. Automatic emergency braking system is only a driving assistance system to reduce severity of collision, it is not always possible to completely avoid collision in the speed range.

Precautions for automatic emergency braking system

1. Automatic emergency braking system can not violate laws of physics and has certain limitations. Driver must always keep control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.
2. Driver controls speed and the distance from vehicle ahead according to weathers, road surface conditions, traffic conditions, etc.
3. Automatic emergency braking system does not react to animals, crossing vehicles, oncoming vehicles, bicycles and pedestrians.
4. System performance will be greatly limited for targets that cut into the lane quickly, targets that are detected after the vehicle changes lanes, and targets in curves.
5. Fasten all seat belts and secure all loads to avoid danger when automatic emergency braking system is triggered.

6. When automatic emergency braking system is malfunctioning, "  " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on, please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
7. When inspecting the vehicle using a drum tester, front collision warning system and automatic emergency braking system should be turned off.
8. When installing non-full size spare tyre, it is recommended to turn off front collision warning system and automatic emergency braking system, and replace full-size tires of original vehicle in time.
9. In some special circumstances, automatic emergency braking system may perform unnecessary warning and braking, such as at track that crosses a road, entering the underground parking lot turning, etc. Some circumstances will affect and weaken sensor detection, effecting related functions of system, such as tunnel, light of incoming vehicle, reflection of slippery road.
10. Camera sensor is installed behind windshield of vehicle; note that view of sensor should not be covered by pollutants, front or surrounding areas should not be modified. When sensor is completely covered by snow, system function will exit. Automatic emergency braking system performance may be reduced or it may do not work due to sensor vibration or collision. In this case, please go to the authorized service station for recalibration of sensors as soon as possible.

Precautions mentioned above do not cover all circumstances that may affect automatic emergency braking system normal operation. Automatic emergency braking system function may fail to bring the expected effect due to other reasons. Driver must always assume full responsibility for vehicle control anytime.

5-8. Driver Monitoring System (DMS)

Driver Monitoring System (DMS) (If Equipped)

DMS (Driver Monitoring System) uses the infrared camera arranged in the cabin to monitor driving status of driver in real time and collects the face image of driver (such as yawning, eyes closed, nodding, etc.) and line-of-sight area information in real time, judging the driver status in real time. The camera only captures the face of driver, does not capture the rest of the vehicle. The entire face information captured will not be used for personal identification and will not be stored. The system is enabled by default.

■ Main function

1. Determine if driver is fatigued by monitoring facial expression, eye closure, blinking frequency, etc. of driver. When detecting that driver is in a state of fatigue, pop-up window will display on instrument cluster and an alarm sounds;

5. DRIVING ASSIST

2. Determine where the driver is looking and if the driver is distracted by tracking driver line-of-sight. When the driver is detected to be distracted, pop-up window will display on instrument cluster and an alarm sounds;
3. The system is enabled by default every time the vehicle is started, and can be turned off manually on head unit screen. After each power-on, the system will perform self-check, when the camera is blocked or system is malfunctioning, the corresponding prompt will display on instrument cluster.

CAUTION

- DMS can be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".
- When driver monitor system is activated, "" indicator on the meter comes on; when driver monitor system is abnormal, "" indicator on the meter comes on. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When the vehicle speed is higher than 6 mph (10 km/h), driver monitor system will sound an alarm when the system detects that driver is in a fatigued driving state.
- When the vehicle speed is greater than 12 mph (20 km/h), driver monitor system will sound an alarm when the system detects that driver is distracted or does not respond to the reminder.

WARNING

Driver fatigue monitoring system is only an auxiliary tool. In any case, the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle. Fatigue and distracted driving are strictly prohibited. He/she must always concentrate on driving carefully.

5-9. Parking Assist System

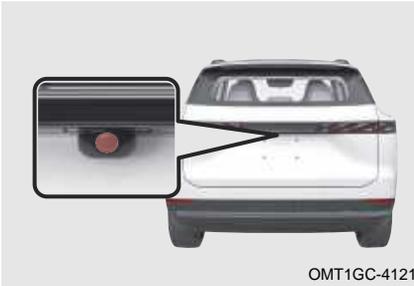
Panoramic View Monitor System (AVM)

Panoramic view monitor system collects surrounding images of vehicle through four cameras and audio system displays the surrounding images and lane guideline, so as to assist the driver to park safely and easily.

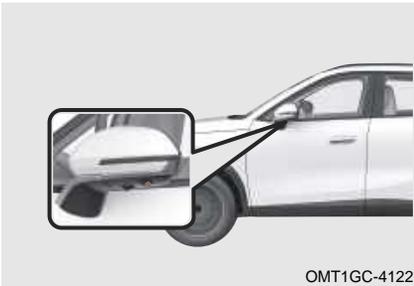
Camera layout



Installation position of front camera:
Lower middle part of the front license plate.



Installation position of rear camera:
Upper middle part of rear license plate.



Installation position of left/right camera:
Bottom of left/right outside rear view mirror.

Usage methods



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and the vehicle is in stationary status, click "AVMS" button on control center to enter panoramic view monitor system; Click "X" button to exit panoramic view monitor system.

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, vehicle speed is lower than 18 mph (30 km/h):

5. DRIVING ASSIST

Method 1: Move shift lever to R to enter AVM; Move shift lever out from R to exit panoramic view monitor system.

Method 2: Turning at a large angle to enter panoramic view monitor system (it is necessary to turn on steering linkage).

Method 3: Turn on left/right turn signal light to enter panoramic view monitor system (it is necessary to turn on steering linkage); Turn off left/right turn signal light to exit panoramic view monitor system.

Note: After turning vehicle power to OFF mode or vehicle speed is higher than 18 mph (30 km/h), it exits panoramic view monitor system.

READ

The panoramic view monitor system provides driving assistance convenience, but the object in the image does not reflect the actual size and obstacle distance. Compared to the actual image, the image has a little delay and blind spot. Therefore, the panoramic view function is not a substitute for driver's operation and judgment. Driver should pay attention to the surroundings and drive safely during turning on/off and using the function.

Switching view



Click " × " button, and shift lever is not in R, exit panoramic view monitor system.

Click " 3D " button to switch between 2D/3D view;

Click " ⌚ " button to switch wheel side view.

Click " ⚙ " button to enter panoramic view monitor system setting.

READ

The panoramic view monitor system is very helpful for parking and safety driving. It is recommended that you should be familiar with this function in an open and convenient area.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not scratch the lens when cleaning dirt or snow on the camera surface.
- Do not place any object on the camera of panoramic view monitor system.
- The object distance seen from the panoramic view monitor system is different from the actual distance.
- Before using panoramic view monitor system, make sure to extend outside rear view mirrors and close the back door firmly.
- The panoramic view monitor system has been calibrated professionally before leaving the factory. Any removal/installation and changes on camera installation position and angle without permission may affect the function and effect of panoramic view monitor system.
- The panoramic view monitor system provides driving assistance convenience, but the object in the image does not reflect the actual size and obstacle distance. Compared to the actual image, the image has a little delay and blind spot. Therefore, the panoramic view function is not a substitute for driver's operation and judgment. Driver should pay attention to the surroundings and drive safely during turning on/off and using the function.

System settings



[Panoramic startup animation] Click "AVM" button for the first time to enter AVM and panoramic startup animation.

[Steering linkage] Turning at a large angle to enter AVM. When turning on left/right turn signal light, 3D view of rear left/right of vehicle will be displayed.

[Automatically zoom in on the view] Enter enlarged view automatically based on obstacle distance.

[Open door prompt] Prompt the status of moon roof, doors and back door.

[Vehicle auxiliary line display] When entering AVM, load the static/dynamic lane guideline and wheel track line.

[Parking radar display] Display corresponding radar distance information (red, yellow, green areas).

[Transparent vehicle body] Change the transparency of vehicle model.

[License plate number setting] Set and display the corresponding license plate number information on vehicle model.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

[Restore the default value] Restore default settings.

CAUTION

When the AVM system is turned on, the host displays the AVM system interface. When the host detects that the system or one or more cameras are malfunctioning, the corresponding single-side view and bird's-eye view will appear black screen display and corresponding text or icon prompts. At this time, the AVM system may not be used normally, and the black screen fault may occur in the following scenarios:

- Do not use high-pressure water or steam to rinse the camera sensor area, otherwise water or steam will enter the camera and condense on the lens, causing blurred images or even causing a short circuit in the camera, resulting in a black screen phenomenon in the camera image.
- Do not tap or bump the camera in any way. Severe tapping and bumping may cause the camera position to deviate or the device to be damaged, which may cause the camera interface to appear misaligned or black screen.
- Non-professionals should not disassemble camera equipment. If there is a poor connection between the vehicle and the rear view camera display system, the camera may appear black screen.
- If the black screen occurs in the camera during heavy rain, please check whether water enters the camera installation position. If water enters through the gap of the connector, a short circuit may occur in the around view monitor, which may cause the camera screen to go black.
- When other electrical equipment is working at full load, the rear view camera display system may be affected by voltage fluctuations, which may cause the camera screen to go black. You can try to disconnect other electrical equipment and restart the vehicle to restore the normal use of the camera function.

The above scenario does not fully cover all the situations where the AVM system has a black screen display fault. In order to ensure the normal use of the function, when the system has a black screen fault, go to the local aftersales service center as soon as possible for inspection and repair.

Parking Radar System

Parking radar system is a radar detection device, adopts radar sensors (4 sensors or 8 sensors) to detect if there are obstacles in front of and behind the vehicle and distance from obstacles. The driver is prompted by the audio system display, sound alarm, etc., so as to assist the driver to park safely and easily.



Turn vehicle power to ON mode. When the vehicle is stationary and the gear position is in D/N/R, parking radar system turns on automatically; When parking radar system turns on and the gear position is in D/N ("P_{1/2}" button is highlighted), click "P_{1/2}" button on control center to turn on/off parking radar system manually.

READ

Parking radar button is not standard. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.

Usage methods

Method 1: Turn vehicle power to ON mode. When the vehicle is in R position and the radar sensor detects an obstacle, audio system displays distance from obstacle (red, yellow, green areas) accompanied by alarm sound.

Method 2 (if equipped): Turn vehicle power to ON mode. When the vehicle is in D/N/R position and the radar sensor detects an obstacle, audio system displays distance from obstacle (red, yellow, green areas) accompanied by alarm sound.

When parking radar system is turned on and vehicle speed is higher than 9 mph (15 km/h), parking radar system is turned off automatically. When vehicle speed is less than 9 mph (15 km/h), parking radar system is turned on automatically again; When the vehicle is in D/N position, click "P_{1/2}" button to turn off parking radar system, parking radar system cannot be turned on again automatically according to vehicle speed.

Note: When radar sensor is malfunctioning, parking radar system will sound for 2 seconds when it is turned on. When parking brake is applied or the shift lever is changed to P, the radar sensor malfunction warning sound will be shielded.

READ

- Monitoring distance is the shortest vertical distance between obstacle and radar sensor.
- When parking brake is applied with radar ON, audio system will only display arc information, and audio system prompt does not sound.
- For models with 8 sensors, regardless of whether the parking radar system is turned on before moving shift lever to R position, parking radar system still operates when shifting to other positions (except for P gear).

5. DRIVING ASSIST

CAUTION

- For obstacles out of detection range, radar sensors will not alarm.
- When vehicle is moving, be aware that the reverse radar sensors on the other side may get close to other obstacles.

Function limit

■ Parking radar system may not work normally in the following conditions:

1. When vehicle is on a steep slope.
2. When driving in jelly-like snow or rain.
3. Low objects such as rocks, etc. cannot be detected.
4. Objects higher than bumper cannot be detected.
5. Thin objects such as wires, fences and ropes, etc. cannot be detected.
6. When vehicle is equipped with a high frequency radio or antenna is in use.
7. When radar sensor surfaces are frozen, they will not detect any obstacle.
8. When radar sensors are covered by dirt, snow or mud, they may not detect obstacles.
9. Objects that easily absorb ultrasonic waves (such as soft snow, cotton, sponge) cannot be detected.
10. When there is large noise near the vehicle, (such as vehicle horns, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other loud noises producing ultrasonic waves).
11. If multiple radar sensors detect obstacles, the distances between each radar sensor and each obstacle are displayed on audio system simultaneously, and system sounds according to nearest obstacle.

Cleaning radar sensor



When washing vehicle, use a soft cloth or water (low water pressure) to wash off foreign matter such as snow, mud, and dust on the surface of radar sensor.

High pressure water flow such as water guns or large external forces may damage the radar sensors. Do not pinch or impact the radar sensors, otherwise the sensors will not work normally.

Parking assist system (If Equipped)

Parking assist system switch

Method 1: User can click "parking assist" on the homepage.

Method 2: Alternatively, users can swipe down from the top of the audio head unit to access the control center and click "P" button.

Parking setting

The assisted parking system can help users park their vehicles in or out of the parking spaces recognized by the system. The system is helpful because users can search for and confirm the target parking space; additionally, they can also select a parking space through the in-car display screen. After the target parking space is confirmed, the system will realize the auxiliary parking function under the user's supervision. The types of parking spaces supported by the system include horizontal parking spaces, vertical parking spaces, and inclined parking spaces.

CAUTION

- The auxiliary parking system does not support mechanical multi-storey parking Spaces.
- There are blind spots (such as overhanging obstacles or sloped walls) in the detection of the auxiliary parking system. When risks occur, it may not alarm, give false alarms or delay.
- The assisted parking system cannot determine whether a parking space is legal and safe and reliable, such as a parking space for the disabled. There are requirements for parking Spaces with the orientation of the front of the vehicle, and you need to make your own judgment.
- The assisted parking system is an assisted driving function and cannot completely replace the driver's driving behavior. When driving a vehicle and parking it, the driver should always keep a close eye on the surrounding environment, avoid any dangerous situations, and control the vehicle to stop in time—all to ensure driving safety and prevent accidents such as accidental injuries.
- There are blind spots (such as overhanging obstacles or sloped walls) in the detection of the auxiliary parking system. When risks occur, it may not alarm, give false alarms or delay. Targeted alarms avoid user over-reliance on system alarms.. When in danger, users need to control the vehicle in time and apply the brakes to avoid accidents.
- During the use of the auxiliary parking system, users need to always pay attention to the surrounding environment, especially suddenly vehicles, bicycles, pedestrians (especially children), small animals or other small animals close to one's own vehicle sharp, low, suspended and low-lying obstacles. When determining the risk of possible scratches or collisions, Please gently press the brake pedal to take over the vehicle in time to avoid safety accidents.
- In some narrow parking lot scenarios (such as parking spaces in corners, etc.), sensors may have certain limitations, and there may be a certain risk of collision.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

Auxiliary parking

Select "Assisted Parking" to enter the assisted parking interface. The in-car system will prompt "Searching for parking Spaces". When the system detects available parking Spaces, the in-vehicle infotainment system prompts that the auxiliary parking function is available and asks you to stop.

When the system detects available parking Spaces, the in-car display screen will show the parking space information. Please park at this time. If there are multiple available parking Spaces, users can select the target parking space to park in on the in-car interface. After confirming the target parking space, once the system takes over the parking operation, the in-car system prompts the user to release the steering wheel with both hands and the brake pedal. The system then enters the assisted parking process.

CAUTION

- When the vehicle speed exceeds 30km/h, the user's click on the parking assistance switch at this time will not respond. If the user has entered the parking assistance system and the vehicle speed exceeds 30km/h at this time, the system will directly exit.
- The system recommends parking the vehicle in a parking space marked with a "number", and users can also choose the parking space they want to park in independently in the in-car infotainment system.
- During the process of searching for parking Spaces, the vehicle speed should be $\leq 25\text{km/h}$, and the lateral distance between the driving path and the alternative parking space should be maintained between 0.5 and 1.8 meters.
- When a user is driving a vehicle to search for a parking space, it is necessary to ensure that the Angle between the vehicle and the parking space line is no more than 15° . If the Angle is too large, it may result in the parking space being unidentifiable.

Assist parking out

The central control screen will display all the available parking directions. There is a recommended direction. You can click the direction arrow to switch to what you need.

After confirming the parking direction, keep the brake pedal pressed, click "- Start Parking ", and release the brake pedal and steering wheel according to the text prompts on the system interface to activate the parking assistance function. After the parking is completed, the vehicle assistance switches to P gear and exits the parking interface.

Pause/Resume/Exit parking

■ Pausing/resuming parking

- If the driver needs to pause the parking process, he/she can directly depress the brake pedal to stop the vehicle.

- If the driver needs to resume the parking process, he/she can depress the brake pedal and click "Continue" on the audio head unit screen.

CAUTION

Parking will also be paused when the vehicle continuously detects an obstacle at a close distance, or when the driver unbuckles the seatbelt, opens the door, etc.

■ Exiting parking

If the driver needs to exit the parking process, he/she can do so by taking over the steering wheel, depressing the accelerator pedal, clicking the exit button on the audio head unit, or shifting the gear position.

CAUTION

If the vehicle remains paused for more than 1 minute, or if there are an excessive number of reverse parking attempts, the parking process will also be exited.

WARNING

After parking is exited, the driver needs to promptly take over the vehicle to avoid danger.

Custom Parking

The user activates the parking assistance system, enters the parking interface, and under the assistance parking interface, selects "Self-selected Parking Space" to enter the self-selected parking space interface.

After confirming the target parking space, once the system takes over the parking operation, the in-car system prompts the user to release the steering wheel with both hands and the brake pedal. The system then enters the assisted parking process.

When using the self-selected parking space function, make sure the vehicle is stationary; otherwise, it will result in the function being unusable.

Users can double-click the box to switch the direction of the parking space, drag the box to select the parking position, and control the rotation button to fine-tune the Angle. Users need to ensure the availability of the located location.

■ Restrictions and Exits

The following scenarios may cause the assisted parking system to fail to work or exit:

- Before using the assisted parking system, users need to confirm that all surround-view cameras and ultrasonic radars are clean. If the cameras and radars are dirty, and the parking space lines are worn out in rainy weather, resulting in unclear visibility. There is also water accumulation in the parking

5. DRIVING ASSIST

Spaces. Environmental conditions such as reflection may all affect the performance of assisted parking.

- The car door, front hood and rear tailgate are not closed, the seat belt is not fastened, and any of the rearview mirrors are not unfolded.
- The vehicle is in a scene where there are curves, steep slopes, or potholes on the road (such as gullies, sewers, the edge of cliffs, and heights) Platforms, raised curbs, sidewalks, slippery road surfaces, etc.
- There are objects inside or around parking Spaces that are difficult for sensors to detect, especially those with small cross-sections (for example: Sharp branches, suspended objects, charging piles, fire boxes, etc.)
- The parking assistance system malfunctions or a collision occurs, etc.

WARNING

The above-mentioned restrictions do not cover all the circumstances that affect the normal operation of assistive functions. Assisted parking is an assisted driving function Yes, but it cannot completely replace the driver's driving behavior. When parking a vehicle, the driver should always maintain. Be vigilant and pay close attention to all kinds of dangerous situations around you to ensure safe driving. Otherwise, it may cause accidents, or even It leads to serious property damage, personal injury and even death.

Traceback Reversing System (RA) (If Equipped)

The traceback reversing system will record the driving route before reversing and assist in reversing back to the starting point by following the trace, without the need for driver control steering wheel.

 CAUTION

- The traceback reversing system is an assisted driving function and cannot completely replace the driver's driving behavior. When driving a vehicle and parking it, the driver should always keep a close eye on the surrounding environment and avoid any dangerous situations. Control the vehicle to stop in time to ensure driving safety and avoid accidents such as accidental injuries.
- The traceable reversing system has blind spots in detection and may fail to alarm, give false alarms or delay when risks occur. Late alerts prevent users from overly relying on system alarm information. When in danger, users must timely control the vehicle and brake to prevent accidents.
- During the use of the traceback reversing system, users need to always pay attention to the surrounding environment, especially when they suddenly approach vehicles, bicycles, pedestrians (especially children), small animals or other small animals near one's own vehicle sharp, low, suspended and low-lying obstacles. When determining the risk of possible scratches or collisions, Please gently step on the brake to take over the vehicle in time to avoid safety accidents.
- In some narrow reversing scenarios (such as very narrow alleys, the vehicle itself has encountered obstacles on both sides. If the sensor performance is outside the safe distance range controlled by the system, etc., there are certain limitations, There can be a certain risk of collision.

The user activates the parking assistance system, enters the parking interface, and selects "Trace Reversing".

After meeting the conditions of the traceback reversing system, the system prompts the user, "The traceback reversing function is available. Please stop." After the user stops the vehicle, the system controls the vehicle and prompts the user, "Keep the vehicle stationary and click to start reversing." At this time, the system controls the vehicle to return at a speed of ≤ 5 km/h along the memorized route.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

READ

- After the traceback reversing system is activated, the traceback reversing interface in the vehicle's infotainment system displays the reversing distance and the maximum support Hold 50 m.
- The traceback reversing system is mainly applied to reversing in narrow alleys and is also suitable for following the original path on wide road conditions reverse.
- After enabling the traceback reversing function, if the vehicle has not traveled a certain distance after being powered on, at this time, the traceback should be activated, The reversing function is not available.
- When the vehicle speed is ≤ 30 km/h and the user drives the vehicle forward, the tracking and reversing system's auxiliary cycle record is the best The last route that advanced 50 m.
- During the reversing process, if you encounter non-fixed obstacles such as pedestrians or vehicles and there is a risk of collision, Users need to keep a close eye on the surrounding environment in real time and stop the vehicle to avoid safety accidents.
- When the vehicle speed is ≤ 30 km/h and the user drives the vehicle forward, the system will assist in remembering the reversing route if the user switches the gear to R for reversing while memorizing the path, at this time, the system it will assist in clearing previous memory paths. When the gear is switched to D again to move forward, the system start a new round of reversing path memory.
- Due to the safety distance limit when the system controls the vehicle, when you use the traceback reversing system, to ensure the efficiency it can be used normally. Please confirm that the distance between the vehicle and the surrounding sides is at least greater than when in use 50 cm. The traceback reversing system only provides you with assistance and cannot be used in all driving conditions or weather strips, It operates normally under the conditions of the equipment, traffic conditions or road conditions. When necessary, active control by the user is required.

WARNING

- During reversing, if the vehicle encounters non-fixed obstacles such as pedestrians and vehicles and there is a risk of collision, the user needs to pay real-time attention to the surrounding environment and brakes the vehicle to stop to avoid accidents.
- The follow-trace back-up assist system only provides assistance for you, and does not operate properly under all driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions. When necessary, users need to take active control.

■ Restrictions and Exits

The following scenarios may cause the reversing function to fail to work properly:

- Before using the traceback reversing function, users need to confirm that all surround-view cameras and ultrasonic radars are clean. If dirty cameras and radars, as well as environmental conditions such as rainy or snowy weather, may all affect traceback reversing parking the performance.
- The car door, front hood and rear tailgate are not closed, the seat belt is not fastened, and any of the rearview mirrors are not unfolded.
- The vehicle is in a scene where there are curves, steep slopes, or potholes on the road (such as gullies, sewers, the edge of cliffs, and heights) Platforms, raised curbs, sidewalks, slippery roads, etc..
- There are objects inside or around parking Spaces that are difficult for sensors to detect, especially those with small cross-sections (for example: Sharp branches, suspended objects, charging piles, fire boxes, etc.)
- The parking assistance system malfunctions or a collision occurs, etc.

WARNING

The above-mentioned restrictions do not cover all the circumstances that affect the normal operation of the cruise parking function. Cruise parking is an assisted driving function, The function cannot completely replace the driver's driving behavior. When parking a vehicle, the driver should always ensure safety stay vigilant and pay close attention to all kinds of dangerous situations around you to ensure safe driving. Otherwise, accidents may occur it may even lead to serious property damage, personal injury or even death.

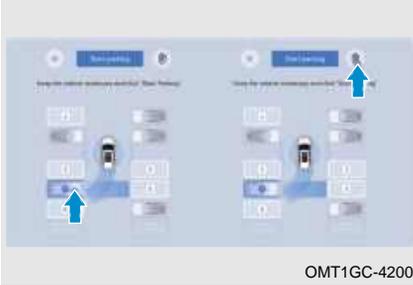
■ Remote Parking Assist (If Equipped)

WARNING

- Remote parking is an assisted driving function and cannot completely replace the driver's driving behavior. When using remote parking, drivers should always pay close attention to the surrounding environment. In case of dangerous situations, they should promptly control the vehicle to stop to ensure driving safety and avoid accidents such as accidental injuries.
- The operating range of remote control can be affected by the environment
- Remote parking cannot be used when the vehicle's battery level drops below 15%.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

Remote Park-in



in the Park-in assist, Select your target parking space on the audio screen

After selecting the parking space, click the remote key icon

Shift the vehicle into P gear and make sure to close the car doors after getting out. Please ensure to keep a certain safe distance from the vehicle, but it should not exceed about 3 meters.

After the hazard indicator light of the vehicle has been on for three cycles, press KEY2 for more than 3 seconds to start parking (the green indicator light of the key will continue to flash after starting parking). You can pause the parking by releasing the KEY2 button or opening any door (the key indicator light changes from green to red). After the parking is paused, you can exit the remote parking in advance by double-clicking KEY2. After exiting, the vehicle will automatically shift into P gear, the power will be switched to OFF, and the vehicle will be locked for security (The key stays lit with a red light for 3 seconds and then goes out.).

After parking is completed, the vehicle will automatically shift into P gear, the power will be switched to OFF, and the vehicle will be locked for security. (The key stays lit with a green light for 3 seconds and then goes out)

 CAUTION

- Please keep the distance between the remote key and the vehicle at around 3 meters, otherwise it may exceed the remote control range and pause
- In case more than 1 minute has elapsed since the parking process is paused, the system will exit the parking, and the driver shall take over the vehicle promptly to avoid hazard occurrence
- The electromagnetic interference around can interfere with the communication process between the key and the vehicle, which may cause the remote parking to enter a pause. If parking is paused due to electromagnetic interference, you need to press the button again to continue parking. Possible sources of interference include: the distance between the mobile phone and the key being too close, beside substations, signal towers, and indoor distribution antennas in underground parking lots, etc
- If there is a suspicion of a key jam, that is, the vehicle is still parking after releasing the key, you can press any other key to pause the parking. After pausing, you must wait for the button to resume and then hold it down again to resume parking.
- During the remote parking process, if there are pedestrians on the necessary path for parking, the system will enter the "Pedestrian Yielding" mode, stop the vehicle, and the vehicle will light up its hazard lights as a warning. The flashing stops and the parking can resume after the pedestrian leaves.
- When the vehicle's central control screen reminds the user to get off, the timer starts for 3 minutes. If the parking function is not activated after 3 minutes, the vehicle will automatically shift into P gear, the power will be switched to OFF, and the vehicle will be locked for security.

Straight-in/Straight-out

Users can control the vehicle to travel straight forward or backward for a certain distance by using the straight-in/straight-out function.

 CAUTION

Please ensure to keep a certain safe distance from the vehicle, but it should not exceed about 3 meters.

5. DRIVING ASSIST



Press and hold the KEY2 button for more than 3 seconds to activate remote key parking mode.

After releasing the key button, wait for the vehicle to light up the hazard lights for three cycles



Press and hold the KEY1 button for more than 3 seconds to activate straight-out mode (single trajectory of 3 meters) (The key continuously flashes green light). Release the KEY1 button to activate parking pause mode (The key changes from green light flashing to red light flashing, with the red light flashing for approximately 2 seconds.).



Press and hold the KEY3 button for more than 3 seconds to activate straight-in mode (single trajectory of 3 meters) (The key continuously flashes green light, The vehicle's hazard lights keep flashing). Release the KEY3 button to activate parking pause mode (The key changes from green light flashing to red light flashing, with the red light flashing for approximately 2 seconds. The hazard lights of the vehicle no longer flash).



Double-press the KEY2 button to exit remote parking, the vehicle will automatically shift into Park, and it will be locked, and powered off. Or open the driver's door to exit remote parking. (The key stays lit with a red light for 3 seconds and then goes out.)

⚠ CAUTION

- Please keep the distance between the remote key and the vehicle at around 3 meters, otherwise it may exceed the remote control range and pause.
- In case more than 1 minute has elapsed since the parking process is paused, the system will exit the parking, and the driver shall take over the vehicle promptly to avoid hazard occurrence
- The electromagnetic interference around can interfere with the communication process between the key and the vehicle, which may cause the remote parking to enter a pause. If parking is paused due to electromagnetic interference, you need to press the button again to continue parking. Possible sources of interference include: the distance between the mobile phone and the key being too close, beside substations, signal towers, and indoor distribution antennas in underground parking lots, etc
- If there is a suspicion of a key jam, that is, the vehicle is still parking after releasing the key, you can press any other key to pause the parking. After pausing, you must wait for the button to resume and then hold it down again to resume parking.
- When the vehicle's central control screen reminds the user to get off, the timer starts for 3 minutes. If the parking function is not activated after 3 minutes, the vehicle will automatically shift into P gear, the power will be switched to OFF, and the vehicle will be locked for security.

5-10. Braking Force Control System

Electronic Stability Control System

Electronic stability control system keeps vehicle stability when oversteering or understeering. When oversteering or understeering is detected, system applies braking to one or more wheels to enhance control of vehicle stability and ensure the lateral stability of vehicle driving.



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, click "  " button on control center to turn on/off electronic stability control system.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

READ

- Electronic stability control system cannot be turned off during operation.
- When driving vehicle for the first time, Electronic Stability Control System (ESP) is on by default.
- Electronic stability control system may give an alarm abnormally after replacing with the non-full size spare tyre. After using the normal size tyre and driving for 1 miles (1 km), it will automatically return to normal.

Electronic stability program system indicator

When turning off, "" yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

During operation, "" yellow indicator on instrument cluster blinks.

When there is a fault, "" yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

WARNING

- When electronic stability program system is malfunctioning, please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Even when ESP is working, high speed driving, sharp turns or poor road conditions can cause accidents.
- ESP function does not completely ensure that you can take over vehicle if it has lost control due to various extreme situations. Even with ESP, always follow laws and regulations to avoid accidents.
- The function of driver assistance relies on ESP for safety. If ESP is turned off, many functions of driver assistance will not be available, temporary malfunction light may appear on the instrument cluster to indicate that the function is not available (not driver assistance system failure). In order to continue to use the driver assistance function, turn on ESP function again, the driver assistance function will recover.

Function limit

■ Under the following conditions, ESP needs to be turned off:

1. When driving with tyre chains.
2. When starting vehicle on power tester.
3. When driving on roads with deep snow or loose gravel.

READ

To improve vehicle traction when driving on sand or gravel, it is recommended to turn ESP off.

Hill Descent Control (HDC) System

HDC system can help vehicle drive on steep roads safely under controlled conditions. After HDC is turned on, when vehicle is driving down on a steep slope, speed control range is 6 mph to 21 mph (10 - 35 km/h). When initial speed is lower than the minimum speed, vehicle will control at the minimum speed by default. The current control vehicle speed can be increased or decreased in a given speed range by depressing accelerator or brake pedal.



When vehicle speed is no more than 37 mph (60 km/h), click "  " button on control center to turn on/off hill descent control system.

CAUTION

- Before entering steep road, set hill descent control system so that driver can operate steering wheel without distraction.
- When hill descent control system is working, the ABS system will start automatically if there is a tyre lock.
- When hill descent control system is working, if any wheel loses contact with ground, the braking force will be distributed to the wheel with higher adhesion coefficient.
- Hill descent control system actively applies braking force through the operation of electronic stability program system. There will be a hydraulic operation sound when the system is working, which is a normal phenomenon. When the electronic stability program system fails, the hill descent control system cannot be turned on. Please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

WARNING

The driver must control vehicle and operate as needed during the whole driving process to avoid danger.

Hill descent control system indicator

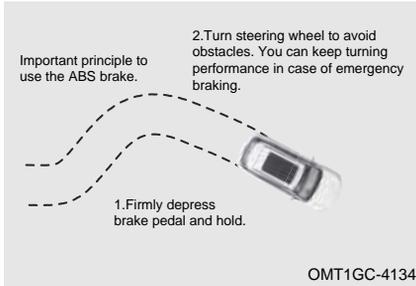
When it is activated, "  " green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When there is a fault, "  " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

ABS can prevent wheel from being locked in excessive braking or braking on a slippery road, avoiding vehicle sideways slippage or vehicle drifting and keeping vehicle stability.



ABS does not function during normal braking and operates only (-brake pedal pulsates with noise, ensuring brake performance and steering performance, if the space is enough, the vehicle can also avoid obstacles) during sudden braking. Never release brake pedal in this case.

WARNING

- Always drive carefully and make sure to decelerate during turning.
- When anti-lock brake system is malfunctioning, please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Although anti-lock brake system can ensure the best braking effect, braking distance will vary largely due to road conditions.
- Also, anti-lock brake system cannot eliminate risks arising from close-following driving, driving through water, turning quickly or driving on poor road surfaces and cannot avoid accidents caused by inattentive or inappropriate driving.
- ABS cannot ensure that braking distance can be shortened in any situations. When vehicle is equipped with tyre chains, on sand or snow covered roads, vehicles with ABS may require a longer braking distance compared to vehicles without ABS.

Anti-lock brake system indicator

When there is a fault, "" yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

WARNING

When anti-lock brake system malfunction indicator and brake system malfunction indicator remain on at the same time, park your vehicle in a safety place far away from major traffic and contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Function limit

■ ABS will make operation sound in following conditions:

1. Rebounding sound of brake pedal.

2. Impacting sound between suspension and vehicle body due to emergency braking.
3. Operation sound of motor, solenoid valve and return pump in hydraulic unit.
4. Operation sound of solenoid valve when electronic brake force distribution system is intervened in braking.
5. Buzz will be heard for a short time after vehicle is powered on or engine is started, indicating system self-test is performed.

■ Always maintain a safe distance from vehicle ahead in the following situations:

1. When driving on rough roads.
2. When driving on roads with potholes or uneven surfaces.
3. When driving with tyre chains.
4. When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads.

CAUTION

Tyre size, specification and tread pattern wear will seriously affect anti-lock brake system performance. Replaced tires should have same size, load capacity and structure as original one. When a tyre is faulty, it is recommended to replace with an original brand at the authorized service station.

WARNING

- When driving on rainy days, properly control the vehicle speed, because if the wheel spins or slips, ABS system will lose control of vehicle.
- Although ABS system can help to control vehicle, make sure to drive carefully, maintain a moderate speed and keep safe distance from preceding vehicles. There are certain limitations in vehicle stability and steering wheel operation effect even ABS system operates.

Extended Function

Electric Brakeforce Distribution (EBD) system

EBD system automatically adjusts braking force distribution ratio of front and rear axles according to axial load transfer difference caused by braking to improve braking efficiency. In addition, EBD system works together with ABS system to improve braking stability. Also, when braking in curve, brake force of inside and outside wheel can be adjusted to improve braking stability.

Hill-start Assist Control (HAC) system

HAC can prevent vehicle from moving backward when starting off on uphill. After vehicle is stationary, HHC system adopts longitudinal acceleration sensor to determine if the vehicle is on a slope. When vehicle starts from stationary state on a slope to drive or reverse upwards, HHC system

5. DRIVING ASSIST

automatically operates. When starting off, after driver releases brake pedal, system maintains previous braking pressure for 1-2 seconds to hold the vehicle. As increasing of drive torque, brake pressure reduces gradually, avoiding accidents caused by moving backward when starting off on a slope.

Brake Assist System (BAS)

Brake assist system is used to shorten the braking distance in emergency braking. In an emergency, driver usually brakes in time, but generally does not apply the maximum braking force, thus lengthening braking distance. In this case, brake assist system will operate. When driver depresses brake pedal rapidly in an emergency with insufficient force, brake assist system quickly increases brake pressure to maximum level, making anti-lock brake system shorten braking distance more quickly and effectively.

5-11. Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle System (PHEV)

PHEV can be driven by fuel energy and electricity energy, which combines the advantages of electric vehicle and fuel vehicle, there is no need to worry about driving mileage of electric vehicle and high fuel consumption of fuel vehicle. It satisfies economy, energy-saving and environmental friendly.

Power Battery

Basic function of power battery

The main method of charging power battery is to plug in the external power gun for charging, and power battery can also be charged by motor when braking, sliding or starting engine.

The vehicle has intelligent recharging function. When the function is triggered, 12 V battery will be charged by power battery. Therefore, when the vehicle is started again after being placed for a period of time, SOC or pure electric driving mileage displayed on instrument cluster will decrease, which is a normal phenomenon.

■ Since the performance of power battery will decline in low temperature environment, the following treatment methods will help you to use the vehicle better:

1. If ambient temperature is lower than -10°C , it is recommended to park vehicle in a warm house or a garage with room temperature.
2. If there is no warm house or garage with room temperature, the vehicle has charging and heating functions of plug-in charging gun. If charging gun is connected, it is recommended to select travel reservation function half an hour before departure, which can increase power battery temperature to the best state and turn on air conditioning in advance, so that you can have a better driving experience.

■ The following methods will help power battery to be in the best state:

1. It is recommended to charge the power battery fully with a charging device at least once every month.
2. When SOC is less than 20% during driving, avoid sudden acceleration and high-speed driving, and charge it as soon as possible.
3. When the vehicle is not used for a long time, park it in a place where the ambient temperature is lower than 45 °C and there is no ponding, and try to avoid direct sunlight.
4. When the vehicle is not used for a long time, SOC displayed on instrument cluster may be inaccurate. Do not judge the remaining power of power battery based on SOC, and charge battery fully before driving.
5. When the vehicle is not used for a long time, the power battery should be charged and maintain the SOC at 50%-70%. Failure to do so may cause excessive discharge of the power battery and decrease the power battery performance, and vehicle malfunction and damage caused by this will not be guaranteed.
6. For a new vehicle, when the power battery is in normal condition, vehicle driving mileage may fluctuate due to driving habits (such as frequent acceleration and deceleration), road conditions (such as driving on a large and long slope), temperature (such as low temperature) and whether electric equipment (such as air conditioning) is turned on, which is a normal phenomenon.
7. Power battery is a special chemical product, which needs to be used and maintained properly, so proper daily use and maintenance is very important for performance maintenance. At the same time, power battery will decline naturally due to chemical characteristics. Therefore, for vehicles that have been used for a period of time, when trip mileage decreases after battery is fully charged, it is recommended to go to authorized service station for inspection. If authorized service station checks that the total capacity of power battery is in normal range, the decrease of trip mileage may be caused by external reasons such as driving habits, temperature etc.

Power battery recovery

■ Recover and disposal range

Power battery whose residual capacity and charge and discharge performance after using cannot guarantee the vehicle normal driving, or is not used again after it is removed due to other reasons.

■ Recover and disposal process

The power battery is installed on the vehicle chassis, which consists of lithium battery cells. Disposal at will can cause pollution and harm to the environment. According to relevant regulations, vehicle owner is obliged to hand over used power battery to recycling service stations. It is strictly forbidden to hand over used power battery to other units or individuals. The vehicle owner shall be responsible for environmental pollution or safety accidents caused by unauthorized removal or disassembly of the power battery.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

Be sure to dispose according to the following information or requirements. For details on the recycling and disposal of power battery, please go to authorized service station.

1. The temporary recycling service station for used power battery is the local authorized service station.
2. The disassembly of power battery must be performed by professional serviceman with certification qualification of power battery supplier.
3. The power battery belongs to the 9th category of dangerous goods and must be transported by vehicles with the 9th category of dangerous goods transportation qualification.
4. The removed power battery should be stored in a normal temperature, dry environment, away from flammable materials, heat sources, water sources and other hazards.

WARNING

- Do not dispose of power battery by yourself.
- Do not sell, transfer or modify power battery.
- When power battery needs to be repaired, removed, replaced and disposed, always go to authorized service station.

Usage precautions for power battery

Power battery belongs to high voltage energy-storage device and dangerous goods. It is necessary to go to authorized service station to have professional serviceman install and maintain power battery and observe related safety regulations strictly; Non-professional serviceman and improper operation and use may cause serious results such as electric shock, combustion, explosion etc. Non-professional serviceman are prohibited to install, repair power battery and abuse it beyond specified range. Power battery damage and other losses caused by using it without observing requirements or beyond specified range will not be guaranteed. Pay attention to the following:

1. Anti-shock and anti-collision

The battery cells of power battery are connected in series and equipped with management system and various sensor devices, so be careful when driving on uneven roads to prevent power battery from bumping.

2. Heat insulation in any environment

Keeping power battery in the best operating temperature range can greatly prolong the service life of battery and improve safety performance, so try to park vehicle in heat insulation and ventilated places.

3. Moisture-proof and water-proof

Power battery is a high voltage energy-storage device with many high voltage control circuits and battery cells. The liquid entering power battery may cause short circuit, electricity leakage and corrosion of battery cells,

electric circuits and connectors. Make sure that power battery will not be soaked by various liquids and moist air will not enter the power battery.

New Energy



Energy consumption list: Query the data of total mileage/total driving mileage/recent 31 miles (50 km)/since reset.

Energy flow: Display current energy flow condition of vehicle.

Slow charger unlock: Unlock the AC charging gun and stop charging.

Charging/discharging management: External discharge.

Energy management: Set battery protection mode, energy recovery intensity, pure electric mileage display and driving distance display.

More: Pedestrian warning, Extreme energy saving and disclaimer.

Energy Flow Condition	Description
Pure electric drive	Only motor drives the vehicle, the engine is not working.
Extended range mode	Engine charges the power battery, and motor drives the vehicle to drive.
Parallel drive	Engine and motor drive vehicle at the same time.
Engine direct drive	Engine drives vehicle directly.
Generating electricity when driving	Engine charges power battery when engine drives the vehicle.
Generating electricity when parking	Engine charges power battery when parking.
Feedback brake	Motor recovers braking energy and charges power battery.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

WARNING

The pedestrian protection sound can only be turned off when there is no other road user within a short distance and the surrounding environment clearly does not require a prompt sound. As long as pedestrian is likely to appear around the vehicle, pedestrian protection sound needs to be turned on.

Energy Recovery Intensity

When vehicle is coasting, the system will convert the mechanical energy of motor into electrical energy to recover energy and charge the power battery, thus reducing energy consumption.



With vehicle in READY state, set energy recovery intensity (low/medium/high) through Audio System - Settings - New Energy.

Energy Recovery	Function
Energy recovery intensity is low	The vehicle coasts for a long distance and driving comfort is better.
Energy recovery intensity is medium	It is suitable for most driving habits because it combines driving comfort and energy recovery efficiency.
Energy recovery intensity is high	Vehicle deceleration is highest and it can recover more energy.

READ

- Under conditions of a higher SOC or low ambient temperature, there may be difference in the driving experience of energy recovery.
- Energy recovery intensity is set as low or medium for a better balance of driving comfort and economy. Energy recovery intensity is set as high, which may cause a dragging feeling, so it is recommended for high speed driving.

Operating Mode

Power mode



OMT1GC-1133

With vehicle in READY state, click power mode button (EV/HEV) on control center to switch the power mode; The corresponding mode indicator on instrument cluster comes on to prompt you that power mode is switched successfully.



OMT1GC-1134

With vehicle in READY state, set power mode (HEV/EV/EV+) through Audio System - Settings - Driving; The corresponding mode indicator on instrument cluster comes on to prompt you that power mode is switched successfully.



OMT1GC-2075

With vehicle in READY state, dial knob (EV/HEV) to switch the power mode; The corresponding mode indicator on instrument cluster comes on to prompt you that power mode is switched successfully.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

Power Mode		Description
EV mode	EV	The vehicle is driven by pure electricity and the engine does not start.
	EV+	Increase the depth of discharge to provide a longer pure electric driving mileage than EV mode. It is recommended to use this mode only in an emergency to reduce the deep discharge of the battery, which is helpful for improving the maintenance of battery.
HEV mode	HEV	The vehicle is driven by hybrid power, and the engine can start or stop at any time to participate in driving or power generation according to requirements of working conditions.

READ

- When the power battery level is higher, the vehicle will automatically switch to electric mode (EV mode) if it is in READY state. It is recommended that you prioritize the use of electric mode (EV mode).
- With vehicle in READY state, P gear and HEV mode, when the power battery level is below a certain value, depressing the accelerator pedal can trigger the forced parking power generation function.
- When vehicle runs continuously in electric mode, pure electric driving mileage decreases with the decrease of battery level. When power battery level is too low, it will switch to HEV mode automatically.
- In some conditions (such as low battery level), it may be impossible to switch from HEV mode to electric mode, and "Current Conditions Not Met, Mode Cannot Be Switched" will be displayed on instrument cluster.
- If vehicle is used in electric mode for a long period of time, the lubrication condition of engine may deteriorate due to infrequent use, therefore, the engine will be automatically started for self-maintenance at regular intervals. Once the maintenance is completed, the engine will automatically shut down.

Power saving mode



With vehicle in READY state, set power saving mode (Initial/Smart/Forced) through Audio System - Settings - New Energy.

It is recommended to select the smart power saving mode, which can achieve a better balance of economy and power.

Power Saving Mode	Description	Common Usage Scenarios
Initial mode	The maximum battery power can be discharged to achieve the maximum pure electric driving mileage.	Suitable for users who drive daily and have charging conditions.
Smart power saving mode	Prioritize the fuel economy, intelligently select the best charging time while driving, and reserve energy for pure electric or high-power driving.	Suitable for various usage scenarios, and this mode is recommended.
Forced power saving mode	Prioritize the battery level holding to get as close as possible to the target battery level, so as to reserve energy for pure electric or high-power driving. Fuel economy will deteriorate in this mode.	Suitable for camping and other usage scenarios that require external discharging.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

READ

- In non-forced power saving mode, when vehicle is powered off and then powered on again, it will enter the battery level mode memorized before powering off.
- In forced power saving mode, different target battery levels can be set based on specific needs, at the same time, you can select whether to memorize the forced power saving settings. If "Memorized" is selected, it is still the forced power saving next time the power is turned on; If "Not memorized" is selected, it will switch to Smart power saving next time the power is turned on.

Pure electric driving mileage

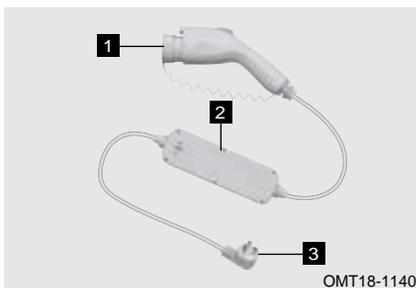
■ Pure electric driving mileage may be affected by the following factors:

1. Driving habits: Frequent acceleration and deceleration or intense driving will result in shorter mileage compared to constant speed driving.
2. Usage of equipment such as air conditioning: Turning on the air conditioning for cooling or heating will result in shorter mileage compared to turning off.
3. Road conditions: Bumpy roads or long uphill roads will result in shorter mileage compared to flat and dry road conditions.
4. Temperature: Available power or driving mileage will decrease as the temperature decreases, and low temperature environments will result in shorter mileage compared to room temperature environments.
5. During actual usage, driving mileage will also show different variations due to weather, roads, congestion and other factors.

Charging Device

External wire harness charging port assembly (if equipped)

External wire harness charging port assembly is a charging device equipped with the vehicle. Connect the vehicle to a socket (220V/20A special AC circuit and three-hole socket) that meets the local national standard to charge the vehicle. Using special AC circuit can prevent short circuit or line trip protection due to high power when charging power battery. If special AC circuit is not used, the normal operation of other devices on the line may be effected.



1 Charging gun

2 Control box

3 Charging plug

(Due to market differences, the charging plug style is subject to the actual vehicle)

 READ

- When inserting charging gun to charge, the charging gun will be locked automatically.
- After charging is completed, if vehicle is in the disarming state, charging gun will unlock automatically; if vehicle is in the arming state, charging gun will remain be locked, and can only be unlocked after vehicle is in the disarming state.

 READ

Dear users, in order for you to reasonably use the on-board AC slow charging gun for safe charging, the following tips are hereby given. Please read them carefully and use them as required.

- Please use the national standard single-phase power supply socket with the specification of AC250V16A, and use copper core conductor with a wire diameter no less than 2.5 mm² as the socket wiring, and it must be well grounded;
- The front end of power supply socket must be equipped with a leakage protection air switch. The specifications of the leakage protection air switch are a single-phase rated current of 20 A and a leakage protection threshold of 30 mA;
- It is strictly forbidden to use non-standard power supply equipment such as old socket, universal socket, adapter, adapter cable, modified socket, and grounding Device;
- If the surface of AC slow charging gun or power supply socket is damaged, rusted, blackened, melted, deformed or other abnormalities, please do not charge;
- It is strictly forbidden to soak the entire power supply plug or AC slow charging gun in water. It is strictly forbidden to charge outdoors in rainy and snowy weather or flammable, explosive and other dangerous environments. Do not clean the vehicle while charging;

5. DRIVING ASSIST

READ

- When inserting and unplugging the charging plug, please hold the plug or handle, do not pull the wire, and ensure that the plug and jack are inserted in place;
- It is strictly forbidden to unplug the vehicle plug or power supply plug during charging. If there is an emergency, please manually disconnect the leakage protection air switch to cut off the power;
- If charging is stopped when charging does not automatically end, after the power supply socket is manually disconnected or leakage protection air switch on socket cuts off the power supply automatically, manually remove the charging gun.
- When collecting the AC slow charging gun, it is strictly forbidden to throw it away, which will cause product damage. The dust cover must be installed in place after use;
- During charging, if the temperature of the power supply port rises abnormally, please check if the power supply socket is aging and replace the power supply socket in time.

CAUTION

- Due to safety electricity regulations, it is not recommended to use this device for charging on rainy days.
- It can be only used when the power supply is equipped with circuit breaker (RCD).
- In crowded places, users should place cables horizontally as far as possible during charging.
- If the cables are too long, do not pull the cables by force.
- Lay cables on a flat road without sharp gravel or glass debris.
- Be careful not to use it in places with corrosive liquids, flammable dust, strong corrosive.
- In common aisle or outdoor across road sections, it is necessary to build bridges or use underground crossings, especially to prevent heavy vehicles from repeatedly crushing.

⚠ CAUTION

- The cable itself is heavy, please avoid vertical suspension, it is easy to be affected by wind, long-term shaking and vibration will reduce the cable life.
- Never use free cables longer than 7.5 m to charge.
- When ambient temperature is lower than 0°C, charging time is longer than usual.
- Please insert and unplug the charging gun vertically as carefully as possible to prevent damage to the vehicle or charging device.
- Household AC charging uses on-board charging device to charge, it is recommended to use 220V 50Hz 8A special AC circuit with grounded socket. Special circuit can prevent short circuit or line trip protection due to high power when charging power battery. If special circuit is not used, the normal operation of other devices on the line may be effected.

Control box indicators

Operating/ Malfunctioning Condition	Power Indicator (Green)	Charging Indicator (Red)	Malfunction Indicator (Red)	Charging Completion Indicator (Green)
Initial state	Remain on	Flash once	Flash once	Flash once
Waiting for charging mode	Remain on	Turn off	Turn off	Turn off
Normal charging mode	Remain on	Remain on	Turn off	Turn off
Charging completed	Remain on	Turn off	Turn off	Remain on
Self-checking	Remain on	Turn off	Flash	Turn off
Communication malfunction	Remain on	Remain on	Flash	Turn off
Input voltage overvoltage/ undervoltage	Remain on	Turn off	Remain on	Turn off
Grounded malfunction	Remain on	Turn off	Remain on	Flash
Overcurrent malfunction	Remain on	Flash	Remain on	Turn off
Leakage malfunction	Remain on	Turn off	Flash	Flash
Over temperature protection	Remain on	Remain on	Remain on	Remain on

5. DRIVING ASSIST

CAUTION

Do not attempt to remove or repair control box. If above malfunctions occur, please go to authorized service station.

Troubleshooting common malfunctions

■ Unable to charge

1. Observe status of indicator and analyze it according to malfunction status.
2. Check if it is grounded well.
3. Check if voltage of power supply is normal.
4. Check if connection of vehicle is normal.

■ Intermittent charging

1. Observe status of indicator and analyze it according to malfunction status.
2. Check if 220 V AC is stable.
3. Check if temperature is too high.

■ Power on trip during charging

1. Check if it is grounded well.
2. Check if device is short circuit.
3. Check if total power of all electric equipment is too high.

■ Malfunction occurs each time power on when charging

Unplug three-pin plug and charging gun, then insert and unplug them again. If malfunction still occurs, please go to authorized service station immediately.

Charging Operation

Inspection before charging

■ If any of the following conditions occur, charging is prohibited, otherwise it may cause short circuit or electric shock, resulting in personal injury.

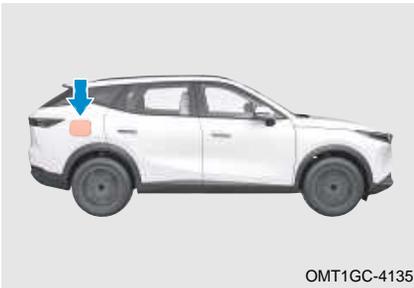
1. When the connection of discharging device is loose, do not perform charging.
2. Make sure that there is no water or foreign matter in the charging port, and the metal terminals are not rusted or corroded.
3. Make sure that the charging device is free from shell breakage, cable wear, rusty plug and other abnormal conditions.

AC charging (slow charging)**⚠ WARNING**

When using household power for charging, the current specifications of the selected socket and adapter cable should not be lower than the rated current on the nameplate of on-board charging device. Ensure that the three-pin socket of the household power supply is reliably grounded, otherwise resulting in electric shock.

⚠ CAUTION

AC charging gun must be equipped with leakage protection and temperature monitoring devices, with a current limit of 230 V/10 A/50 Hz.



1. Park vehicle in charging area, shifting the gear to P and apply the parking brake;
2. Select charge now in new energy setting screen of head unit, vehicle is powered off;
3. Push center rear of the charging port cover to open it;

4. Take out the on-board charging device, insert the charging plug into power socket;
5. Open protection covers of charging port and charging gun, and insert charging gun into AC charging port until a slight sound is heard (or remove the charging gun from AC charging pile, connect the charging gun to the AC charging port and lock it firmly);

6. After charging is completed, press and hold the upper button on charging gun to unplug the charging gun from AC charging port;
7. Close protection covers of AC charging port and charging gun, and then close charging port cover.
8. Stow on-board charging device (or return the charging gun on the charging pile to its original position).

When charging is completed, or stop charging manually during charging, release the AC charging gun lock by the following operations:

5. DRIVING ASSIST

- Unlock the vehicle;
- On head unit, press unlock button on slowing charging gun.

■ Charging/discharging indicator



The charging/discharging indicator is located in charging port cover. Indicate the charging/discharging status in yellow, green, blue, and red respectively.

Remains on in yellow: Waiting for charge.

Flashes in green: It is being charged.

Remains on in green: Charging is completed.

Remains on in red: Charging/discharging fault.

Flashes in blue: Discharging.

Remains on in blue: Waiting for discharge.

READ

- After charging with on-board charging device is completed, unplug the charging gun end first, and then unplug the connector at power supply end.
- During charge reservation, select charge reservation in head unit, the connected charging device starts charging when it arrives at the appointment time.
- Charge reservation is only suitable for AC charging and private charging piles, and needs to be realized with the charging gun connected. The charging piles that use card swiping or code scanning are not available.
- With vehicle is powered off, if hood is not fully closed after being opened, charge now, charge reservation, and appointment trip functions will not operate properly.

 CAUTION

- Do not store or use charging device where the temperature is higher than 50°C, otherwise charging device may be damaged.
- When external power grid is powered off and then powered on again, charging device will start charging automatically again without reconnecting charging device.
- Before closing charging port cover, please confirm that the charging interface protective cover is closed. If the charging port cover is closed and the charging interface protective cover is open, water or dust may enter the interior of the charging port, causing a malfunction.
- When charging vehicle, power battery under floor and on-board charger in front compartment are in operating condition. At this time, "click" sound of relay engagement is heard several times, which is normal.
- After charging is completed, disconnect the charging gun of charging device, then disconnect power supply plug.
- If the vehicle is not used for a long time, it is recommended to charge and discharge once a month to prolong service life of power battery.
- Before starting vehicle, make sure that charging device is disconnected, charging port cover and charging interface protective cover are closed, otherwise, water or foreign matters may enter charging port terminals and affect normal use.
- When charging port is frozen, use a hair dryer, etc. to thaw it. If charging gun is connected forcibly in frozen condition, it will cause malfunction.
- If there is foreign matters on charging gun or in charging port, it is forbidden to connect it forcibly when it cannot be connected. Please contact the authorized service station. If it is connected forcibly, charging device and vehicle may be damaged.
- Do not use electric appliances for a long time when vehicle is powered on. When it prompts that power battery is low, insert charging gun to charge in time, or use engine to charge when vehicle is in READY mode, otherwise, it may lead to power loss of power battery and failure to start vehicle; In this case, insert charging gun to recharge it before restarting; If vehicle still cannot be started, please contact the authorized service station.
- When power meter indicator on instrument cluster enters red warning bar, it indicates that the power battery is low. It is recommended to charge when the power drops to the red warning bar or power mode is switched from EV electric mode to HEV hybrid mode. It is not recommended to charge after power is completely depleted, otherwise it will affect the service life of power battery. In order to ensure the normal operation of hybrid transmission, when vehicle power battery is low, the vehicle will automatically switch from EV electric mode to HEV hybrid mode.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

DC charging (fast charging)



1. Park vehicle in charging area, shifting the gear to P and apply the parking brake;
2. Select charge now in new energy setting screen of head unit, vehicle is powered off;
3. Push center rear of the charging port cover to open it;
4. Remove DC special charging gun from charging pile, unplug protective cover of DC charging port, and insert charging gun into DC charging port until a slight sound is heard;
5. After charging is completed, press and hold the upper button on charging gun to unplug the charging gun from DC charging port;
6. Close protection covers of DC charging port and charging gun, and then close charging port cover.

WARNING

- It is strictly forbidden to use AC/DC adapter for charging, as it will cause damage to the vehicle and personal injury.
- Never unplug charging gun forcibly when charging vehicle, otherwise it may cause damage or danger.
- Keep charging device out of the reach of children, and the persons who need care such as children are prohibited from charging.
- Refueling and charging cannot be performed at the same time. When charging gun is inserted, do not refuel and keep a sufficient safe distance from inflammables, otherwise it may damage device and cause personal injuries when charging cable is not inserted or unplugged according to regulations.

AC charging socket electronic lock

The vehicle AC charging socket is equipped with an electronic lock function, which prevents the charging gun from being plugged in and pulled out with electricity, and avoids charging safety problems.

■ Locking of electronic lock

Use 32A AC charging pile that meets the national standard for charging. After the charging gun is inserted in place and after the electronic lock is automatically locked, the vehicle will start charging.

 WARNING

After the electronic lock is locked, if you need to remove the charging gun, please unlock the electronic lock before pulling out the gun; Do not pull the gun forcibly, so as not to damage the electronic lock or charging gun and other charging equipment.

■ Unlocking of electronic lock

Normal electronic lock unlocking is divided into the following two ways:

1. Press the lock button on smart key first, then press the unlock button on it to unlock the electronic lock, and gently press the mechanical lock button on the charging gun to pull out the charging gun.
2. Without using the smart key, hold the charging gun by your hand and press the button on the charging gun with your thumb. When you hear the electronic lock unlocking sound, first lift your thumb, and then quickly press the mechanical lock button on the charging gun again to pull out the charging gun.

 READ

- If the charging gun is not pulled out after the electronic lock is unlocked, the electronic lock will be automatically relocked after several seconds.
- If the vehicle is in the unlocked state and the electronic lock is in the locked state, it is necessary to close the door and lock the vehicle before performing above electronic lock unlocking operation.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

Releasing Charging Gun Manually (Only for AC Charging)



If charging gun cannot be unplugged from AC charging port by pressing and holding the upper button of charging gun, it can be released manually by using the cable.

1. Make sure that the vehicle is not charged at present according to charging information displayed on instrument cluster;
2. Open the back door and lift the luggage compartment carpet;
3. Pull charging gun release cable to release charging gun manually.

CAUTION

Release cable can only be used when charging gun cannot be released from charging port by conventional methods. Continuous use may cause damage to release cable or charging device.

WARNING

- Do not try to unplug charging gun while pulling release cable. Be sure to pull release cable before trying to unplug charging gun from charging port. Failure to do so may cause electric shock and serious injuries.
- Do not perform this operation when charging vehicle or any orange high voltage cable is exposed; Failure to do so may cause electric shock and serious injuries or vehicle damage; If you are not sure how to perform operation safely, please contact the authorized service station immediately.

Charging Precautions

Charging precautions on rainy days

1. When charging in rain, please take care to protect the charging device from water ingress.
2. It is strictly prohibited to charge outdoors in extreme weather conditions such as heavy rain, typhoons, hail, etc., that exceed national standards, as this may result in charging not being able to be carried out, and even cause damage to the vehicle or charging device.
3. When charging is required after a rain shower, please confirm whether there is water entering the charging port at first. Do not charge when there are

obvious water stains in the charging port, as this may result in failure to charge, in severe cases, damage to the vehicle or charging device.

Precautions for end of charging

■ Manually stop charging

1. Stop charging at first, and ensure that the electronic lock is unlocked.
2. Hold the charging gun, and press and hold the button on charging gun to unplug it.
3. For AC charging, do not forcibly unplug the charging gun when electronic lock is locked, as this may damage the charging port.
4. For DC charging, never forcibly unplug the charging gun before stopping charging, as this may damage the charging port and pose a risk of electric shock.
5. After charging is completed, it is necessary to ensure that charging gun has been unplugged completely before starting vehicle, otherwise charging device and vehicle may be damaged.
6. After unplugging the charging gun, please ensure that the charging port protective cover and charging port cover are in closed condition, so as to prevent water or foreign objects from entering the charging port and affecting the normal use.

■ Automatically stop charging

1. After charging is completed, please unlock first, and then unplug the charging plug.
2. After charging is completed, it is necessary to ensure that charging gun has been unplugged completely before starting vehicle, otherwise charging device and vehicle may be damaged.
3. After unplugging the charging gun, please ensure that the charging port protective cover and charging port cover are in closed condition, so as to prevent water or foreign objects from entering the charging port and affecting the normal use.

The charging performance of vehicle is affected when the battery temperature is too low or too high

1. If the charging port cover or charging gun is frozen due to weather or other reasons, do not open the charging port cover or unplug the charging gun forcibly.
2. When charging at low temperature, the battery thermal management system will be in operation, but the charging time will be extended and the heating power consumption will increase, which is normal.
3. In northern regions with low temperature, it is recommended that users perform charging in a heated room.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

4. In northern regions with low temperature, it is recommended that you charge immediately after using the vehicle, as the battery temperature will be relatively high at this time, resulting in better charging performance.
5. In southern regions with high temperature, it is recommended that users charge in a cool and ventilated place, and do not charge in direct sunlight or in air.

External Discharging Function (If Equipped)

The external discharging function uses new energy vehicles as a power supply. Through the external discharging device, it can draw power and discharge externally, meeting the voltage requirements of general household appliances. It can be used for outdoor camping, barbecue, cooking, and other scenarios, satisfying your power needs outdoors.



With vehicle in READY state, turn External Discharge to ON on New Energy screen. Before unplugging the discharging gun, it is necessary to turn External Discharge to OFF.

READ

External Discharging Device shall be purchased separately. For details, please consult the authorized service station.

Usage precautions

- Avoid vehicle crushing, falling, and human trampling when using.
- Store the product in a cool and dry place when not using it.
- Ensure that the standard plug matches the specification of the product's power strip before use.
- Never contact metal terminals of the discharging power strip or vehicle charging port when discharging.
- During discharging, if any abnormal condition occurs, such as odor or smoke, please stop using it immediately.
- During discharging, never place device in luggage compartment, under the front of vehicle or near tyre.
- During use, never drag the wire forcibly to avoid tension or squeezing.
- Never fall the device or pull the cable directly to move the this device. Handle it gently when moving it.

- When gun head and socket are separated and not in use temporarily, they should be covered with protective covers or properly protected.
- Do not use the power strip if its surface is damaged, rusty, broken, or the connection is loose.
- Before use, please ensure that there are no abnormalities such as damage on the surface of discharging gun, cable, and discharging power strip in the discharging device.
- If gun head is dirty or damp, please cut off the power supply first, and then use a dry and clean cloth to wipe the gun head, and ensure that the discharging gun head is clean.

Discharging operation

■ Inspection before discharging

If any of the following conditions occur, external discharge operation is prohibited, otherwise it may cause short circuit or electric shock, resulting in personal injury:

1. External discharging operation is prohibited if the connection of the external discharging device is loose.
2. Make sure that there is no water or foreign matter in the AC charging port, and the metal terminals are not rusted or corroded.
3. Make sure that the external discharging device is free from shell breakage, cable wear, rusty plug and other abnormal conditions.

■ External discharging operation

1. The vehicle is in a stationary state, gear position in P, battery and fuel are sufficient.
2. Turn on external discharging function through head unit, open charging port cover and AC charging port protective cover.
3. Insert discharging gun into AC charging port and lock securely.
4. Press the switch button on the discharging socket, and the red indicator light on the power strip remains on, indicating that the socket can be used.
5. After the discharging device is connected, the vehicle begins to discharge, the discharging indicator flashes, and the vehicle displays discharging information.
6. After discharging is completed, disconnect load (external electric appliances).
7. Turn off the external discharging function through head unit, and then press and hold upper button on discharging gun to unplug it from AC charging port.
8. Close AC charging port protective cover and charging port cover. After discharging is completed, put the discharging device into luggage compartment storage box.

READ

- When inserting DC charging gun, the external discharging function is not available.
- Before external discharging, please make sure that battery and fuel are sufficient, otherwise the external discharging function may not operate properly.
- During external discharging, the cumulative power of the external electrical appliances cannot exceed 3.3 kw, otherwise the external discharging function will stop operating.
- With vehicle powered on, if power battery is low during external discharging, the engine will automatically start to charge the power battery, which is a normal phenomenon.
- When vehicle is powered off and connected to external electrical appliances without output for a long time, the static power consumption of vehicle will increase. It is recommended that you unplug the discharging gun when not using the external electrical appliances.

Safety warning for discharging

- Never use unqualified products.
- Use special charging device for electric vehicles that meets relevant national standards.
- Before driving, please ensure that the discharging device is unplugged and the charging port cover is closed.
- Do not modify, remove or repair the charging device and related ports to avoid charging malfunction and causing fire.
- After an external discharging of vehicle, the radiator fan and air conditioning compressor may automatically turn on and operate for battery cooling, which is normal.
- Please discharge in a relatively safe environment (e.g. avoid hazardous chemicals, fire sources, heat sources, lightning, flammable and explosive environments).
- To avoid damaging the vehicle, do not shake the discharging gun when discharging, as this may damage the charging port of vehicle. During discharging, do not perform repair on the vehicle.
- It is forbidden for minors to perform discharging operations or touch and use discharging device. Discharging gun is a high voltage electrical device. Do not let minors approach it when discharging.
- During discharging, if vehicle or discharging device is abnormal (e.g., odor, smoke, etc.), please stop discharging immediately and contact the authorized service station.

Low-speed Pedestrian Warning Sound

Because the noise of electric vehicles is relatively low when driving at low speed, it is difficult for pedestrians nearby to perceive it. In order to improve driving safety, this function can send alarm sound when the vehicle speed is less than 18 mph (30 km/h) to remind pedestrians nearby to perceive it.

- When the vehicle is driving with vehicle speed below 18 mph (30 km/h), the warning sound will increase with the increase of the vehicle speed.
- When the vehicle is not in Park (P) and is stationary, the system also can send warning sound.

5-12. Data Privacy

Chery Automobile Co., Ltd. (hereinafter referred to as 'we' or 'us') is the manufacturer responsible for privacy by design (PbD) of your vehicle.

Driver Drowsiness and Attention Warning (DDAW)

Our vehicle's Driver Drowsiness Alert Warning (DDAW) system works to detect signs of driver fatigue. It does this by monitoring a range of parameters within a recent time window, including the proportion of time your eyes are open, blink rate, direction of gaze, length of gaze, yawning, as well as vehicular parameters such as speed, gear position, car door status, steering wheel angle, and direction of turn. The system uses this information to make a comprehensive judgement about driver fatigue and issue alerts as necessary.

CAUTION

Please be aware that the data collected by the DDAW system is required by regulations, collected for immediate processing, and is not stored. According to the regulations, DDAW will be enabled by default. The collected data is used for algorithmic recognition and discarded immediately after use. All data is processed within the vehicle and does not leave the vehicle.

Advanced Driver Assistance System (ADAS)

In order to implement the drive assistance function, the car side will use the vehicle's front, flanks, and rear cameras to collect image data on the road during driving or after parking, image data surrounding the vehicle to complete drive assistance function. The camera recordings use the vehicle's external cameras to learn how to recognize things like lane lines, street signs and parking signs and traffic light.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

CAUTION

Please be aware that the processing data within our system is designed for immediate use and analysis. We do not store any of the data that is processed. This data is necessary for legitimate interests and also to fulfil legal and other official requirements.

Emergency call (eCall)

In the event when you are in a traffic accident or you press the SOS button for roadside assistance, the eCall system on the in-vehicle terminal will provide your vehicle location, contact information and additional required information to the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) which is set up by government authority. The collection and sharing of these data comply with the requirements of laws and regulations, which only includes GPS, speed, directions of your vehicle, the time when you trigger the eCall, the eCall status, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), vehicle model, power type and Recorded voice data.

CAUTION

We collect this data to fulfil our legal obligations outlined in vehicle security regulations.

6-1. Basic Knowledge of Vehicle Emergency	Engine Coolant Temperature is Too High 237
Vehicle Emergency Rescue 232	Battery is Depleted 239
Hazard Light 232	6-3. Towing
Reflective Vest 233	Towing Hook (If Equipped) 241
Warning Triangle 233	Towing Vehicle 242
Spare Tools 234	Installing Towing Eyelet 243
6-2. Vehicle Emergency Handling	6-4. Fuse
If You Have a Flat Tyre When Driving 234	Fuse Box 244
Repairing Tyre in Emergency 234	Checking Fuse 245
	Replacing Fuse 245

6. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

6-1. Basic Knowledge of Vehicle Emergency

Vehicle Emergency Rescue

ECALL



Manual rescue: When an accident occurs, manually press SOS button to make an emergency call to activate the emergency rescue assistance function.

Automatic rescue: In case of an accident that triggers the airbag, an emergency call is automatically made and details such as the accurate location of vehicle are sent to the emergency call center.

READ

- In order to ensure rescue function work properly, focus on and renew the payment timely.
- When vehicle enters underground garage or travels on roads under intense electromagnetic interference (no network signal), the function may not operate properly.

Hazard Light



In case of vehicle failure or traffic accident etc., please press the hazard light switch to turn on the hazard light (turn signal light flashes), so as to avoid the secondary accident.

READ

- The hazard lights are automatically activated when the airbag is operating.
- The hazard lights can still work when the vehicle power is turned to OFF mode.

Emergency braking alarm function

When brake pedal is depressed in emergency and deceleration is greater at medium and high speed, turn signal lights flash quickly. When brake pedal is

6. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

released, hazard light switch is pressed or vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, turn signal lights stop flashing.

Reflective Vest



The reflective vest is placed in the glove box.

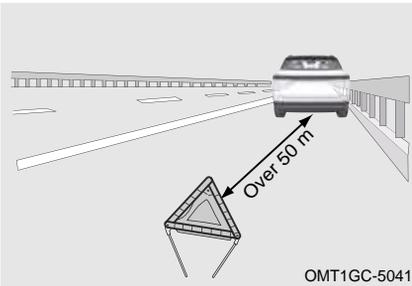
In case of vehicle failure or traffic accident etc., wear the reflective vest with reflective strip facing outwards. It can warn other vehicles to avoid secondary accidents.

Warning Triangle



Warning triangle is located in the luggage compartment.

In case of vehicle failure or traffic accident etc., the reflective performance of warning triangle can warn other vehicles to avoid secondary accidents.



On a normal road, place the warning triangle at a distance of more than 50 m behind the vehicle.

On the highway, place the warning triangle at a distance of more than 150 m behind the vehicle.

In rain or when steering, place the warning triangle at a distance of over 150 m behind the vehicle.

6. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

Spare Tools

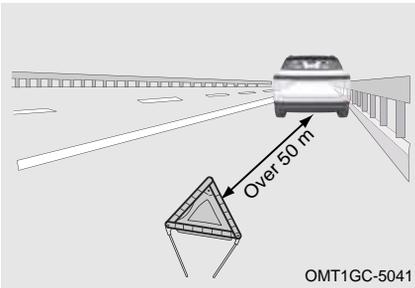


- 1 Tyre repair liquid
- 2 Towing eyelet
- 3 Wheel bolt cover remover (if equipped)

6-2. Vehicle Emergency Handling

If You Have a Flat Tyre When Driving

If a tyre goes flat during driving, slow down gradually, grip the steering wheel with two hands and keep driving straightly. Stop vehicle to a safe place away from the traffic road. Park it on firm and level ground as much as possible. Avoid stopping on center or divider of a highway.



1. Apply parking brake and shift the shift lever to P position;
2. Turn off engine and turn on hazard lights;
3. Have everyone get out of vehicle and stay away from traffic;
4. Wear the reflective vest, take the warning triangle out from luggage compartment and place it over 50 - 150 m away behind the vehicle (- depending on actual condition).

CAUTION

Do not continue driving with a flat tyre. Driving even a short distance can damage the tyre beyond repair.

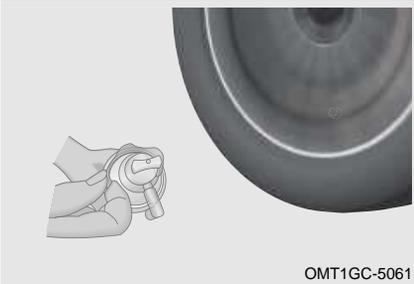
Repairing Tyre in Emergency

Emergency tyre repair instructions for vehicles equipped with automatic inflation tyre repair liquid in case of tyre leakage:

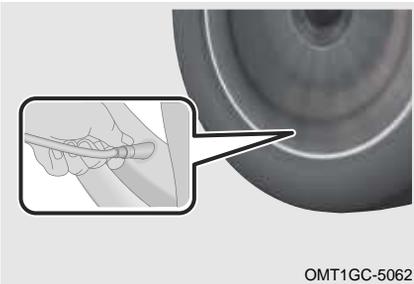
6. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY



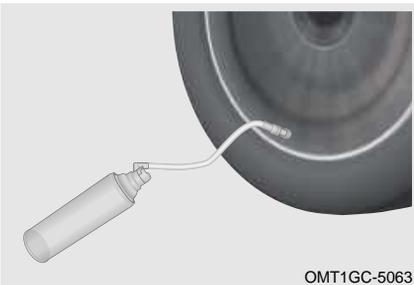
1. Open back door, lift the luggage compartment carpet and take out the automatic inflation tyre repair liquid;



2. Shake the automatic inflation tyre repair liquid well before use, and then tear off the safety belt of the junction valve;

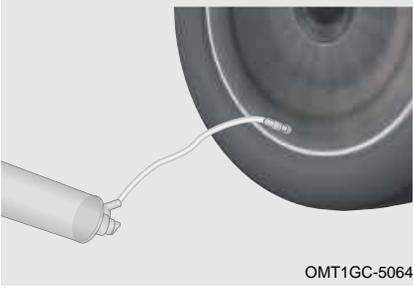


3. Tighten the junction valve of the automatic inflation tyre repair liquid to the tyre valve;



4. Turn the red valve clockwise and place the bottle upside down to start inflating the tyre;

6. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY



5. After the automatic inflation tyre repair liquid is filled, close the valve counterclockwise and screw out the junction valve. Then immediately drive for 6 miles (10 km) or more to complete the repair. Please go to the authorized service station or professional tyre repair shop for repair and replace as soon as possible.

Note: Before using the automatic inflation tyre repair liquid, please check the validity period indicated on the automatic inflation tyre repair liquid tank to ensure that it is used within the validity period.

CAUTION

- The automatic inflation tyre repair liquid is a disposable consumable (for one wheel only), you can go to authorized service station for purchase.
- After using the automatic inflation tyre repair liquid, it supports the vehicle to drive continuously for 310 miles (500 km) or more. For the first 6 miles (10 km), please drive at the speed of < 49 mph (80 km/h). After 6 miles (10 km), drive the vehicle at normal speed. It is recommended that you go to the authorized service station or professional tyre repair shop for repair and replace as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

- Avoid the automatic inflation tyre repair liquid contacting with the skin or eyes and keep it out of the reach of children.
- If you continue to drive the vehicle in the case of tyre puncture and air leakage, it is easy to have tyre blowout, endangering personal safety.
- The automatic inflation tyre repair liquid is used for repairing tread puncture repair, other parts such as shoulder, sidewall and valve nozzle damage are not in the scope of repair.
- When it is required to pull out the puncture object before repairing, make sure to move the vehicle slightly so that the puncture hole is facing downward at 6 o'clock position before filling the tyre with automatic inflation tyre repair liquid.
- If the automatic inflation tyre repair liquid splashes onto the tyre or rim during use, wash it with clean water or wipe it with cloth; if the liquid accidentally gets into your eyes, please wash with clean water and seek medical attention immediately.
- When the product is used in (-40 ° C -0 ° C) ambient temperature, please warm up the product to 0 ° C or more at the heater in the vehicle to increase the filling efficiency of the automatic inflation tyre repair liquid.
- It is effective to repair the puncture diameter of ≤ 6 mm, within which the puncture object can be pulled out for repair; when the puncture diameter is > 6 mm, please contact the authorized service station immediately.
- After using the automatic inflation tyre repair liquid, immediately drive the vehicle for 6 miles (10 km) or more. Never stop and stay. Please go to the authorized service station or professional tyre repair shop for repair and replace as soon as possible.
- The storage temperature of automatic inflation tyre repair liquid is -40 ° C - 70 ° C. It is forbidden to store in the vehicle under direct sunlight; and it is forbidden to contact with open fire; please be sure to store it in the tool box securely according to the requirements, do not put it in the cabin.

Engine Coolant Temperature is Too High

If the engine coolant temperature is high during driving, and engine coolant temperature gauge approaches H area or "  " red indicator on instrument cluster remains on, please stop vehicle to a safe place away from the traffic road.

6. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY



Step 1: Stop vehicles on solid, level ground;

Step 2: Apply the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P;

Step 3: Turn off A/C system (water dripping from air conditioning after use is normal);

Step 4: Turn the power to OFF mode after idling for several minutes, and turn on hazard lights.

Step 5: Before opening the hood, check whether there is steam or coolant overflow or leakage. Only open the hood when there is no steam or coolant overflow or leakage, otherwise, burns may occur;

Step 6: Check the coolant level, if the cause cannot be determined, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair.

CAUTION

- If engine overheats frequently, please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
- If the coolant level is low, pure water can be used temporarily, please go to authorized service station to replace coolant as soon as possible.

Battery is Depleted

Replacing battery



1. Step 1: Click " OFF " button in the control center to switch the vehicle to the power-off state;
2. Step 2: Open the back door, fold back luggage compartment carpet and take out the storage box, disconnect the negative battery (12 V) cable;
3. Remove the negative (-) battery terminal cable;
4. Remove the positive (+) battery terminal cable;
5. Remove the battery holder and the battery;
6. Install a new battery that has same specification as used one. Install the new battery properly in the reverse order of removal.

 ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

The used battery contains sulfuric acid and lead and should not be disposed at will. Please handle according to the local laws and regulations or discard at a local qualified waste disposal station.

 CAUTION

Be careful to avoid the metal tool contacting both electrodes of the battery at the same time or touching the positive electrode and the vehicle body at the same time.

 WARNING

- Do not leave battery within the reach of children.
- Do not smoke, use matches, cigarette lighters or open flames near the battery.
- Always wear gloves and safety glasses during operation, as battery acid is strongly corrosive. Do not lean on the battery.
- If acid spills on your skin or clothes, the liquid must be neutralized with alkaline water (soap), and then wash it with clean water. Get emergency medical attention immediately if necessary.

6. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

Jump-starting

To avoid vehicle damage or personal injury due to improper operation, if you are unsure about how to follow the procedure, We strongly recommends that you seek help from professional serviceman or at an authorized service station.

CAUTION

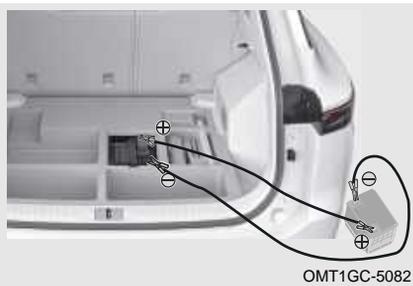
Battery voltage used for jump starting should be 12 - 13 V. Do not jump start unless you are sure that the battery voltage is correct.

WARNING

- The specified jumper cables should be used.
- Do not use cigarette lighters or allow open flame near the battery.

■ Jump-starting procedures

1. Turn off all unnecessary electrical appliances. If booster battery is installed in another vehicle, make sure of no contact between vehicles.



2. Connect cables in order shown in illustration below.

1 Connect positive (+) terminal of discharged battery to positive (+) terminal of supporting vehicle battery with positive cable.

2 Connect one end of negative cable to negative terminal (-) of battery on discharged vehicle, and the other end to the negative terminal (-) of battery on rescue vehicle.

3. Start engine in normal way. After starting, run it for several minutes by lightly depressing accelerator pedal.

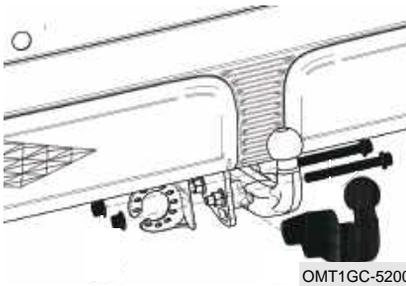
4. Disconnect cables in reverse order of connecting (negative cable first and then the positive cable).

⚠ CAUTION

- During connecting, do not shift to D position to ensure that the vehicle is in the parking state.
- Do not lean on the battery when connecting.
- Never allow the clamps of the jumper cables to contact with each other or touch other metal parts of the vehicle.
- Do not connect cable to or near any part that moves when engine cranks.
- If the first starting attempt is not successful, check that if clamps on jumper cables are tight and restart the engine in normal way. If it still cannot start, please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

6-3. Towing**Towing Hook (If Equipped)**

Use a suitable towing hook when towing a trailer. It is recommended to use the original towing hook. To ensure a smooth towing experience, the original hole drilled by vehicle manufacturer should be used. For more information, please consult professional maintenance personnel.

Towing hook mounting point

Vertical load: maximum 75kg
Horizontal traction 1250kg.

📖 READ

- For a better power experience during towing, it is recommended to charge the vehicle in advance before towing so that the SOC is 50% or more.
- For your driving safety, it is not recommended to perform towing operations when the ambient temperature is 40°C or higher.

6. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

READ

When towing , do not use the following safety systems (these systems may automatically turn off if original towing hook is used):

- Blind Spot Monitor (BSM) system
- Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) system
- Parking assist system (rear)

For details about the installation process, consult the authorized service station.

The towing hook can be used by vehicle pulling another that is not roadworthy.

CAUTION

Damage caused by towing a trailer is not covered by the warranty.

WARNING

When towing , the original towing hook must be used. Do not attempt to use other types of towing hook.

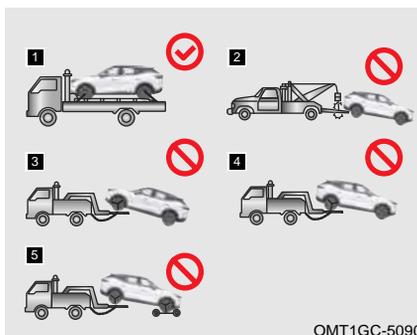
Towing Vehicle

If the vehicle needs to be towed, it is recommended to contact authorized service station or professional towing services department, or ask for help from the roadside rescue service organization you have joined.

WARNING

- Damage caused by transportation is not covered by the warranty.
- To transport the vehicle, follow the instructions below strictly.
- Do not tow your vehicle only with ropes or chains by other vehicles.

Using platform trailer



OMT1GC-5090

Please use **1** platform rescue vehicle to load your vehicle.

Vehicle towing precautions are as follow:

- Tow with four wheels off ground. Do not use the rescue method **2 3 4 5** shown in the figure.
- Before towing, shift the gear position to N, turn on hazard light, and close the doors.
- During towing, nobody is allowed to seat in the accident vehicle.

CAUTION

Do not move the vehicle with forklift when vehicle is broken down.

WARNING

- No person or object is allowed behind the trailer when the vehicle is pulled onto the platform rescue vehicle, otherwise it may cause personal injury or death.
- The vehicle can only be towed away from the site if there is no safety risk. If the vehicle power battery pack has deformation, leakage, smoke, etc., the safety risk should be solved first.

Installing Towing Eyelet

Front towing eyelet



Use a flathead screwdriver with its tip wrapped with tape to remove the front towing eyelet hole cover, screw towing eyelet into installation hole, then tighten it firmly with wheel bolt wrench.

Rear towing eyelet



Use a flathead screwdriver with its tip wrapped with tape to remove the rear towing eyelet hole cover, screw towing eyelet into installation hole, then tighten it firmly with wheel bolt wrench.

6. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

CAUTION

- Only use specified towing eyelet. Otherwise, vehicle may be damaged.
- Drive the vehicle slowly and smoothly when towing. Impact due to excessive tension may damage the vehicle.
- Towing rope or towing bar can be installed only when towing eyelet is installed in place.

WARNING

Make sure that towing eyelet is installed securely. Otherwise, the towing eyelet may come loose when towing, which may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

6-4. Fuse

Fuse Box

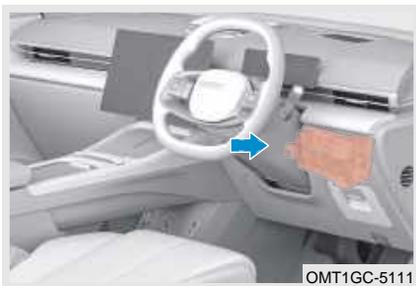
Fuses are used to protect electrical components and circuits to avoid short circuit or overload. If fuse is blown, the protected components and systems will not work properly.

Engine compartment fuse box



Turn vehicle power to OFF mode, and disconnect the negative battery cable. Remove front compartment fuse box cover to inspect or replace fuse.

Instrument panel fuse box

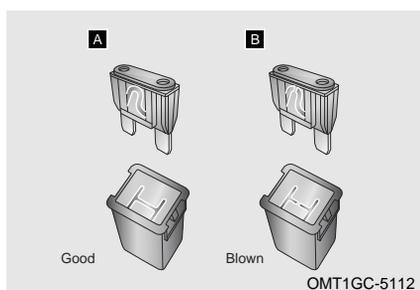


Turn vehicle power to OFF mode, and disconnect the negative battery cable. Remove instrument panel lower right protector to inspect or replace the fuse.

 READ

- Check suspected fuses according to the fuse and relay layout.
- The fuse box must be clean, keep it away from dampness when opening, as moisture may damage the electrical system.
- To prevent damage, be careful when removing/installing the instrument panel lower right protector. Please contact the authorized service station as necessary.

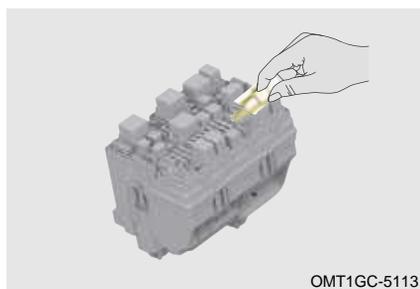
Checking Fuse



A Good fuse.

B Blown fuse.

Replacing Fuse



Step 1: Turn vehicle power to OFF mode, and disconnect the negative battery cable;

Step 2: Check fuses according to the fuse and relay layout, remove the suspected fuse by a fuse remover;

Step 3: Check if the fuse is blown. If you are not sure whether the fuse has been blown, replace the suspected fuse with spare fuse that has the same amperage rating. You can see the amperage rating on the schematic diagram inside the fuse box cover.

 READ

If the spare fuse is unavailable, you can use a fuse with same specification from other unimportant electrical appliances in case of emergency. It is better to purchase a set of spare fuses and put them in vehicle for emergency use.

6. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

CAUTION

- Do not modify fuse or fuse box, otherwise, this may cause serious damage to electrical appliances, or even fire.
- Only install a fuse that has the same amperage rating as used one. Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary replacement. Otherwise, this may cause serious damage to electrical appliances, or even fire.

7-1. Repair and Maintenance

Repair and Maintenance ... 248

Authorized Service
Station is at Your
Service 248

Reading Vehicle
Identification Code
Information 249

Safety Check 249

7-2. Normal Maintenance

Normal Maintenance 250

Power Battery 251

Checking Oil Level 255

Checking Transmission
Fluid Level 256

Checking Brake Fluid
Level 256

Checking Coolant Level 257

Checking Radiator and
Condenser 257

Checking Tires 258

Avoiding Tire Flat Spot 260

Tyre Rotation 261

Checking Battery 261

Checking Air
Conditioning Filter 261

Checking Windshield
Washer Fluid 261

Checking Wiper Blades 262

Service and maintenance
for general paint 263

7-3. Regular Maintenance

Technical Data 265

7. MAINTENANCE

7-1. Repair and Maintenance

Repair and Maintenance

There are two types of repair and maintenance: One is normal maintenance, which can be done by the customers; The other is scheduled maintenance, inspection and repair, which needs to be completed by authorized service station.

For the details of regular maintenance, inspection and repair methods, please refer to "Regular Maintenance" in this section; Regular maintenance can be helpful for you to find and eliminate potential dangers in time to prevent malfunctions. Scheduled maintenance of your vehicle is essential. Please strictly follow the maintenance schedule of "User Manual" to perform maintenance, ensuring that your vehicle maintains the best performance and good operating conditions, thus effectively extending the service life of the vehicle.

Please use the recommended fluid, or your vehicle may be damaged.

Authorized Service Station is at Your Service

Authorized service station

Only OEM parts and materials can extend your vehicle's service life. We only supplies OEM parts to authorized service station located worldwide. Therefore, only OEM parts from authorized service station can be used.

Authorized service station offers a professional service. For vehicle service, please remember that your authorized service station knows your vehicle best, and has the professional technicians and OEM parts to complete the job to the highest standard.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Used engine oil, brake fluid, coolant, steering fluid (if equipped), batteries and tires should only be disposed of by qualified waste disposal agencies or after consultation with manufacturers, and should not be taken out with household waste or disposed of into the communal drainage system.

Service arrangements

When go to authorized service station for vehicle service, make sure to carry all required documents. Not all the work to be performed is covered by the warranty. For detailed expenses, consult your service advisor. Keep a service record on your vehicle. Usually, this record can provide valuable reference information.

Prepare a list sheet covering vehicle malfunctions and specific service items. If you have had an accident or any item serviced is not included in the service records, let your service advisor know.

If you list many service items and you must fetch your vehicle on the day, communicate with your advisor to rank the items by priority.

Reading Vehicle Identification Code Information

The vehicle Identification code information can be readout by installing the malfunction diagnosis device, used for inspections and maintenance.

Do not install electrical components other than the diagnosis device to the connector. Doing so may cause unexpected problems to occur, such as having a bad effect on electronics or damaging the battery.

Safety Check

It is better to perform a safety check before driving vehicle, which will improve your driving safety and enjoyment.

WARNING

While inspecting vehicle, do not start the vehicle.

Daily check

Check whether paint surface is scratched, light shade is damaged, body is tilted, wheel bolts are missed or loosened, water/oil leakage of chassis occurs, door/hood/back door/glass is damaged.

Check that engine oil level, brake fluid level, coolant level, steering fluid level (if equipped) and windshield washer fluid level is normal.

Check cold tyre pressure and conditions (such as: wear, swelling, aging cracks, mechanical damages, etc.). Also check the spare tyre.

Check whether seat belt buckles fasten securely. Make sure belts are not worn or frayed.

Check whether lighting of lights is normal.

Check whether meter indicators are normal.

Monthly check

Clean vehicle surface, inside of engine hood (dust on surface of radiator and condenser, and remaining oil of engine body), vehicle interior and luggage compartment.

Check assembly, pipes, hoses and tanks for leaks; Check whether battery and cable are corroded and loosened; Check whether circuits are damaged, loosened or disconnected; Check that no water/oil leakage has occurred.

Check whether air condition is operating properly.

7. MAINTENANCE

Check whether parking brake is operating properly.

Check whether spare fuses and spare tools (such as: jack, wheel bolt wrench, etc.) are equipped.

READ

Used engine oil, brake fluid, coolant, batteries and tires can be disposed only by qualified waste disposal agencies, or consult supporting manufacturers for disposal of them. It is not permitted to dispose of them with household waste or discharge them into public drainage system.

7-2. Normal Maintenance

Normal Maintenance

Be sure to follow the correct maintenance procedures provided in this section if you perform do-it-yourself maintenance.

This section only lists the simple maintenance instructions which can be performed by customers. However, there are still many items that have to be maintained by qualified technicians with special tools.

CAUTION

- Check for any tools or cloths that may have been left behind before closing the hood.
- Do not drive vehicle with the air filter removed, otherwise, excessive engine wear could occur.
- Correctly add fluid to the appropriate level. If some fluid splashes onto the vehicle, be sure to immediately wash it off with a wet cloth, to avoid damage to the painted surface.

WARNING

- If the engine is very hot, do not open the coolant reservoir cap to prevent scalding injury.
- When the engine is running, keep hands, clothing and tools away from engine drive belts and cooling fan.
- Do not smoke near fuel filler or battery, otherwise, it may cause sparks or open flames, resulting in a fire.
- There is a high voltage in the electronic ignition system. Do not touch these components while the engine is running or the vehicle power is turned on.
- Right after driving, engine, radiator, exhaust manifold and cylinder head will be very hot, so never touch them. Prevent any loose clothing from getting caught in the fan and causing personal injury because the cooling fan may automatically start and run at any time.

Power Battery

Basic function of power battery

The power battery is the power and energy source of vehicle and can be charged and discharged repeatedly. The power battery is charged by an external power supply, and can also be charged by means of energy recovery when braking or coasting.

The vehicle has intelligent recharging function. When the function is triggered, 12 V battery will be charged by power battery. If the vehicle is placed in a high-temperature environment, it is also possible to trigger the power battery cooling request during intelligent recharging process, which will activate the A/C to cool the power battery to avoid damage to the power battery. Therefore, when the vehicle is started again after being placed for a period of time, SOC or pure electric driving mileage displayed on instrument cluster will decrease, which is a normal phenomenon.

Power battery is a special chemical product, which needs to be used and maintained properly, so proper daily use and maintenance is very important for performance maintenance. At the same time, power battery will decline naturally due to chemical characteristics. Therefore, for vehicles that have been used for a period of time, when trip mileage decreases after battery is fully charged, it is recommended to go to the authorized service station for inspection.

The optimal ambient temperature and charging temperature range of the power battery is $25 \pm 5^{\circ}\text{C}$. When the temperature is too high or too low, the battery will limit the output power, and the pure electric driving mileage will be shortened. It is recommended that you use the vehicle in an environment above -20°C ; If it is in a special circumstance, it is recommended to switch the vehicle to HEV mode and use the engine to help drive the vehicle.

When the power battery is low, it is recommended to charge immediately or switch power mode from EV to HEV, and it is not recommended to charge after power battery is depleted, otherwise service life will be affected. In order to ensure the normal operation of hybrid transmission, when power battery is low, the power mode will switch from EV to HEV automatically.

Do not use electric appliances for a long time when the vehicle is not started. When it prompts that power battery is low, insert charging gun to charge in time, or use engine to charge when vehicle is in READY mode, otherwise, it may lead to power loss of power battery and failure to start vehicle; In this case, insert charging gun to recharge it before restarting; If vehicle still cannot be started, please contact authorized service station.

The power battery is located under the body floor, and please drive carefully and prevent it from bumping when the vehicle passes over bumpy roads or is driven on bumpy roads. If driving on a rough road or wading road (over 15 cm deep), please slow down.

7. MAINTENANCE

■ Due to the influence of chemical characteristics of power battery itself and for the purpose of better protecting the power battery, it is normal if the following conditions exist:

1. The power performance of the vehicle will be weakened when the power battery is in low charge.
2. When driving in high or low temperatures, there may be an increase in power consumption and a reduction in driving range.
3. The charge and discharge performance of power battery at high or low temperature will be weakened, and the charging time will become longer, which is a normal phenomenon.
4. When the power battery is nearly fully charged, it will automatically switch to trickle charging mode, which may extend the final charging time. There may be deviations in the estimated charging time displayed on the large screen and instrument cluster of the vehicle.

■ Since the performance of power battery will decline in low temperature environment, the following treatment methods will help you to use the vehicle better:

1. If ambient temperature is lower than -10°C , it is recommended to park vehicle in a warm house or a garage with room temperature.
2. If there is no warm house or garage with room temperature, the vehicle has charging and heating functions of plug-in charging gun. If charging gun is connected, it is recommended to select travel reservation function half an hour before departure (travel reservation function can be set in head unit system and APP), which can increase power battery temperature to the best state and turn on air conditioning in advance, so that you can have a better driving experience.

■ In order to prevent damage to the power battery, the performance of the power battery will be reduced in high/low temperature environments. If the ambient temperature is too high or too low, the charging and discharging power will be affected.

■ When the vehicle is not used for a long time, the following methods will help power battery to be in the best state:

1. When the vehicle is not used for a long time and SOC is less than 20%, charge it as soon as possible.
2. When the vehicle is not used for a long time, park it in a place where the ambient temperature is lower than 45°C and there is no ponding, and try to avoid direct sunlight.
3. When the vehicle is not used for a long time, SOC displayed on instrument cluster may be inaccurate. Do not judge the remaining power of power battery based on SOC, and charge battery fully before driving.

4. When the vehicle is not used for a long time, charge 12 V battery for 15 - 30 minutes once a month (with the vehicle in READY state, keep charging for 15 - 30 minutes).
5. When the vehicle is not used for a long time, power battery system should be fully charged once a month and then discharged to maintain the SOC at about 50%; Failure to do so may cause excessive discharge of power battery.

 **WARNING**

- Once the vehicle is powered on, the high voltage circuit will be in a conducting state. Non-professional personnels are strictly prohibited from conducting any electrical maintenance or repairs on the vehicle while the power is on.
- Non-professional personnels are strictly prohibited to open the power battery. The units or individuals should be responsible for environmental pollution or safety accidents caused by removal or disassembly of the battery without permission.
- If the power battery fails, the battery is depleted. Even with 12 V external power supply, the vehicle cannot be jump started. please contact the authorized service station in time, never repair it without authorization.

Power battery recovery

■ Recover and disposal range

Power battery whose residual capacity and charge and discharge performance after using cannot guarantee the vehicle normal driving, or is not used again after it is removed due to other reasons.

■ Recover and disposal process

The power battery is installed on the vehicle chassis, which consists of lithium battery cells. Disposal at will can cause pollution and harm to the environment.

According to relevant regulations, vehicle owner is obliged to hand over used power battery to recycling service stations. It is strictly forbidden to hand over used power battery to other units or individuals. The vehicle owner shall be responsible for environmental pollution or safety accidents caused by unauthorized removal or disassembly of the power battery.

Be sure to dispose according to the following information or requirements. For details on the recycling and disposal of power battery, please contact the authorized service station.

1. The temporary recycling service station for vehicle used power battery is the local authorized service station.
2. The disassembly of power battery must be performed by professional serviceman with certification qualification of power battery supplier.

7. MAINTENANCE

3. The power battery belongs to the 9th category of dangerous goods and must be transported by vehicles with the 9th category of dangerous goods transportation qualification.
4. The removed power battery should be stored in a normal temperature, dry environment, away from flammable materials, heat sources, water sources and other hazards.

WARNING

- Do not dispose of power battery by yourself.
- Do not sell, transfer or modify power battery.
- When power battery needs to be repaired, removed, replaced and disposed, always contact the authorized service station.

Usage precautions for power battery

Power battery belongs to high voltage energy-storage device and dangerous goods. It is necessary to contact the authorized service station for installation and maintenance of power battery by professional serviceman who must observe related safety regulations strictly; Non-professional serviceman and improper operation and use may cause serious results such as electric shock, combustion, explosion etc. Non-professional serviceman are prohibited to install, repair power battery and abuse it beyond specified range. Power battery damage and other losses caused by using it without observing requirements or beyond specified range will not be guaranteed. Pay attention to the following:

1. Anti-shock and anti-collision

The battery cells of power battery are connected in series and equipped with management system and various sensor devices, so be careful when driving on uneven roads to prevent power battery from bumping.

2. Heat insulation in any environment

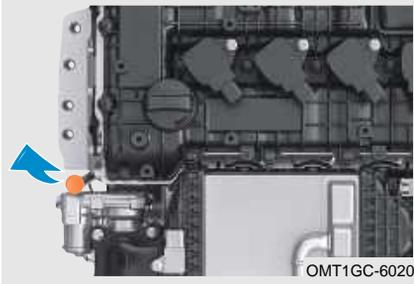
Keeping power battery in the best operating temperature range can greatly prolong the service life of battery and improve safety performance, so try to park vehicle in heat insulation and ventilated places.

3. Moisture-proof and water-proof

Power battery is a high voltage energy-storage device with many high voltage control circuits and battery cells. The liquid entering power battery may cause short circuit, electricity leakage and corrosion of battery cells, electric circuits and connectors. Make sure that power battery will not be soaked by various liquids and moist air will not enter the power battery.

Checking Oil Level

Checking engine oil



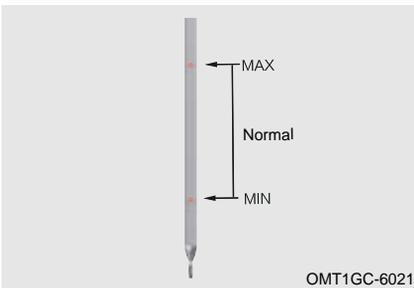
With the engine stalling and cooled down, check the oil level with the dipstick.

Step 1: Warm up the engine and then stop the vehicle on a level ground. Wait about 5 minutes after turning off engine;

Step 2: Open the hood, pull out the dipstick and wipe it with a clean cloth;

Step 3: Insert the dipstick to the bottom uniformly and slowly;

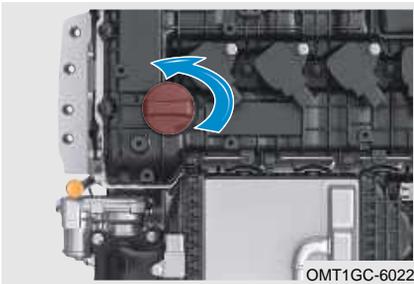
Step 4: Leave the vehicle as is for approximately 3 seconds, pull out the dipstick again and check if oil level is proper.



Put a cloth under the dipstick to avoid oil spilling onto engine or vehicle body.

Do not check the oil level immediately after the engine warms up, and wait until the oil returns into the bottom of engine.

Adding engine oil



Step 1: Turn the engine oil filler cap counterclockwise to open it;

Step 2: Use the funnel to add a small amount of engine oil for several times and check the oil level with a dipstick again;

Step 3: When the level is within the proper range, turn the engine oil filler cap clockwise to tighten it.

7. MAINTENANCE

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Do not discard the waste engine oil and filter in household waste, down the drain or spill on to the ground. Otherwise, it will cause serious environmental pollution. Please dispose it according to the local regulations regarding environmental protection.

CAUTION

- Do not overfill oil, or it may cause damage to engine.
- Only use the recommended engine oil. Other specifications of engine oil may damage the related vehicle systems.
- If oil is accidentally spilled on the surface of the engine during refueling, clean the spilled oil with canvas and other tools before tightening the engine oil filler cap.
- The engine oil filler cap cannot be placed up side down after removal to prevent misjudgment caused by oil backflow, and prevent oil flowed through seal ring from overflowing by itself after assembly again, which results in an illusion of oil leakage from the engine oil filler cap.

Checking Transmission Fluid Level

Checking, adding and replacing of transmission fluid should be done by professionals. Please contact the authorized service station.

Checking Brake Fluid Level



Brake fluid level should be between the “MIN” and “MAX” marks. If the level is at or below the “MIN” mark, add brake fluid and contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

CAUTION

- As the brake fluid is highly absorbent, do not leave the brake fluid reservoir cap open for a long period of time.
- Only use the recommended brake fluid. Other specifications of brake fluid may damage the related vehicle systems and cause personal injury.
- If brake fluid splashes onto the painted surface of vehicle body, be sure to clean it with a wet sponge or wash it off with water to avoid corroding the parts or painted surface.

⚠ WARNING

Never allow brake fluid to contact your skin or eyes. If the brake fluid splashes into your eyes or on your skin, flush the area immediately with a great quantity of water. Get emergency medical attention immediately if necessary.

Checking Coolant Level

1 High Temperature Coolant (Engine coolant)

2 Low Temperature Coolant (Power battery coolant)

When vehicle is cold, the coolant level should be between the "MAX" and "MIN" marks. If the level is at or below the "MIN" mark, add coolant and contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

⚠ CAUTION

- If coolant level falls rapidly, check radiator, water hose and water pump for leakage.
- Do not use poor quality coolant, because the engine becomes excessively hot as running and inferior coolant cannot provide sufficient cooling and corrosion protection.
- Only recommended coolant can be used. Otherwise, all the direct or indirect loss incurred are at user's own risk.

⚠ WARNING

- The coolant is poisonous, so pay extreme caution not to spray the fluid on any part of the vehicle, human body or ground when adding coolant. If the coolant accidentally gets on your skin or eyes, please wash the affected area with a great quantity of water and consult a doctor immediately.
- When engine is hot, the cooling system will be under high pressure. In this case, do not open the coolant reservoir cap, otherwise, the escaping steam may cause scalding injury.

Checking Radiator and Condenser

After the vehicle runs for a period of time, the front surface of condenser and radiator could be blocked with some insects, leaves and other objects, which could affect the performance of air conditioning and cooling system, resulting

7. MAINTENANCE

in air conditioning operating improperly and cooling system overheating. It is necessary to clean radiator and condenser at that time.

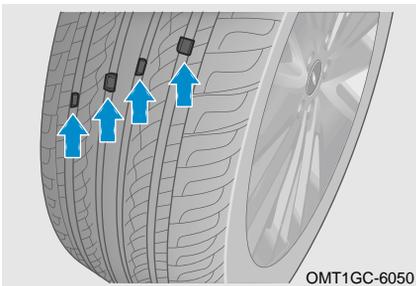
Condenser: With engine turned off and cooled down, clean the condenser by blowing compressed air from rear to front through the radiator.

Radiator: It is recommended to clean the radiator surface every year. With engine turned off and cooled down, use compressed air or water to clean the radiator fins and blow off the insects and leaves, etc. Air and water pressure should not exceed 150 kPa. Otherwise, the radiator fins could be damaged.

CAUTION

- The material of radiator fins has good thermal conductivity, which is used to cool the coolant; Do not brush the fins, or it may cause damage to the fins, affecting the cooling effect.
- Do not spray water on the hot radiator while the engine is hot, otherwise, the generated high temperature steam may result in personal injury. Clean radiator when the engine is turned off and cools down.

Checking Tires



Check the tyre tread for tread wear mark. When tread wear reaches its limit, tread will be in the same plane as the wear band. If such condition occurs, it indicates that performance and safety of tyre seriously decrease, and replacement is necessary.

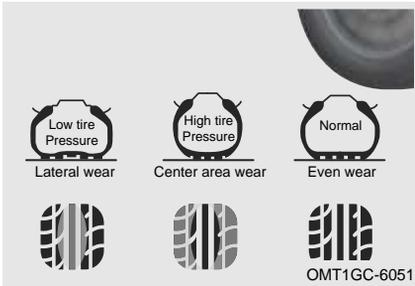
ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Always discard a used tyre carefully. It should be handled according to the local regulations regarding to environmental protection.

■ Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may lead to an accident, resulting in serious injury or even death:

1. Do not use tires that were used on another vehicle.
2. Do not mix tires with remarkably different tread wear.
3. Do not use tires if you do not know how they were used previously.
4. Do not mix tires from different manufacturers, of different models or tread patterns.
5. Do not mix differently constructed tires (such as: radial, bias-belted or bias-ply tires).

6. Speedometer is affected by tyre size. If the tyre size (diameter) is different from the genuine one, it will not display accurate speed, and may result in accidents, such accidents loss are not covered by the warranty.



Incorrect tyre inflation pressure will lead to excessive fuel consumption, shorten the tyre service life and reduce the vehicle stability. Therefore, you should drive the vehicle with proper tyre pressure (For provisions about the tyre inflation pressure, please refer to the tyre pressure label on driver side B pillar). When cold tyre inflation pressure is higher than specified value or economic tyre pressure is used, driving comfort will be reduced accordingly. Please adjust it according to your needs.

■ Be sure to keep proper tyre inflation pressure. Otherwise, the following conditions may occur and result in death or serious injury:

1. Excessive wear.
2. Poor handling.
3. Uneven wear.
4. Poor sealing of the tyre bead.
5. Wheel deformation or tyre separation.
6. Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires.
7. A greater possibility of tyre damage caused by poor road conditions.

7. MAINTENANCE

CAUTION

- It is normal that the tyre inflation pressure increases after driving for a period of time.
- If the tyre needs to be inflated frequently, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- If a tyre often leaks or cannot be properly repaired due to a cut or other damages, it should be replaced.
- Use a tyre pressure gauge to check cold tyre inflation pressure. Visual inspection of a tyre may cause inaccurate estimation on inflation pressure.
- If air leakage occurs while driving, do not continue to drive. Driving even a short distance can damage a tyre beyond repair.
- Be sure to install tyre valve caps properly. Otherwise, dirt and moisture could get into valve core and possibly cause air leakage. If the caps are lost, install new ones as soon as possible.

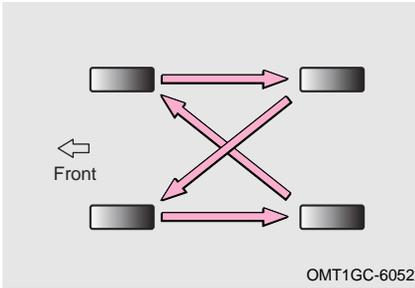
Avoiding Tire Flat Spot

If the vehicle is parked in a high temperature environment for a long time, the contact position between the tire and the ground will be slightly deformed, which is called "flat spot" and it is normal. However, it will cause the body and steering wheel to shake when the vehicle is driving. As the driving mileage increases, the tires will heat up and return to their original state, and the shake will gradually disappear.

When the vehicle is stationary for a long time, the flat spot of tire can be minimized by following methods:

1. Tire pressure management: When parking, adjust the tire pressure to (3.2 ± 0.2) bar to reduce tire contact deformation with the ground, and check the tire pressure at least once a month; Before driving, the tire pressure must be restored to the normal recommended value to ensure driving safety.
2. Regular movement: It is recommended to drive the vehicle once every 2 weeks, with an interval of less than 30 days, and drive for more than 15 minutes each time, so that the tires are evenly stressed by rolling.
3. Long-term parking: If the parking lasts for more than 2 months, it is recommended to use jacks to lift the body, so that the tires are completely off the ground and free from continuous pressure.

Tyre Rotation



To equalize tyre wear and extend tyre service life, We recommends that four tires are rotated every 6214 miles (10,000 km) (the best adjustment and rotation range is 3107 miles to 4349 miles (5,000 - 7,000 km)); The tyre rotation cycle may vary according to driver's driving habits and road surface conditions.

READ

Tyre rotation should be performed by professionals, please contact the authorized service station.

Checking Battery

Battery (12 V): Check and make sure that the battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, external cracks, or loose fixing clamps.

Checking Air Conditioning Filter

Air conditioning filter can prevent outside dust from entering vehicle through air conditioning outlets, and it may be blocked after being used for a long time. If efficiency of air conditioning decreases significantly, check filter and replace it as necessary.

READ

- The replacement of air conditioning filter should be performed by professionals, please contact the authorized service station.
- Using air conditioning with filter removed may result in degradation of dustproof performance, affecting efficiency of air conditioning.

Checking Windshield Washer Fluid

If no washer fluid can be sprayed from washer nozzles, stop operating washers and check if it is necessary to add washer fluid. If it cannot operate properly after adding washer fluid, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair.

7. MAINTENANCE

CAUTION

- Never add antifreeze in the windshield washer fluid, because antifreeze will damage the body painted surface.
- Do not use water as washer fluid when temperature is below zero. Otherwise, water will be frozen, causing damage to washer.
- The capacity of washer fluid reservoir is 4.5 L. When the washer fluid level is low, low washer fluid level warning light will come on and a faults message will appear on the instrument cluster (if equipped), please refer to the actual vehicle.

Checking Wiper Blades

Check the roughness of wiper blade by sliding on its edge using your finger. Wiper blade will not work effectively, if it is too rough.

CAUTION

- Do not use the wiper blades to remove frost or ice covered on the windshield.
- If there are any chips on the windscreen from gravel, please repair quickly.
- In winter, make sure that the wiper blades are not frozen to the glass before operating them to avoid damaging the wiper blades.
- Butter, silicone and fuel may cause the wiper blades to operate improperly, and it is recommended to clean the wiper blades with washer fluid.
- When the blades are lifted for maintenance, the center connector position of the blades should be properly picked up, it is required to enter maintenance mode for some models (for details, please refer to "Wiper System").

Maintaining wiper blades

- Do not use high-pressure water jet to directly wash the wiper blades while washing the vehicle, or the wiper blades could be deformed.
- In order to prevent the formation of build up that obscures view, it is recommended to clean wiper blades using glass detergent regularly once a week.
- For safety, it is advised to replace the wiper blades once or twice a year, the wiper blades can be purchased at authorized service station.
- After washing the vehicle in the automatic car washer, apply pure water to rinse the windshield and blades, to remove the remaining wax layer.
- Do not operate wipers when windshield is dry. Doing so may scratch glass, resulting in permanent damage to wiper blades.
- Do not clean the windshield with fuel, nail polish remover, paint thinner or similar liquid, which can damage the wiper blades.

- Avoid using glass plating agent and hydrophobic agent on the front and rear windshield glass. The hydrophobic layer will fall off slowly after using, resulting in uneven friction of windshield and abnormal noise of wiper shaking.
- When the windshield surface is frosted or frozen, or when dry soil, insect, sticker or other solid particles are attached to the windshield surface, clean them with a wet cloth in time. Do not use a dry cloth or remove them with wiper blades directly, otherwise it will damage the glass and wiper blades.

Using wipers

- Do not swing the wiper arm manually, otherwise it may damage the wiper.
- When there is snow, leaves, branch and other objects, they should be cleaned before operating the wiper.
- Washer fluid should be added as soon as is needed, please use the windshield washer fluid as specified in this manual, and do not use tap water instead.
- In cold weather, always check if the wiper blades are frozen on the windshield before using. If they are frozen on the windshield, always unfreeze before using. Use air conditioning heating and ventilation device to warm up. Do not pour hot water directly to blades, otherwise, windshield may break or wiper blades may deform.

Service and maintenance for general paint

Regular maintenance is good for the preservation of the value of the vehicle. Pay attention to the following precautions when cleaning the vehicle:

- If the vehicle has not been cleaned for a long time and is too dirty, please pre-clean it before driving into the car wash room.
- Do not use strong soaps, chemical cleaners or hot water to wash the vehicle, and do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight or when the body is hot.
- Clean the vehicle regularly as dirt, dust, insects, and tar spots that adhere to the paint surface can damage the paint surface.
- Do not use a rough sponge or aggressive cleaners to clean the vehicle to avoid damage to the paint surface.
- When cleaning the vehicle in winter, it is recommended to use warm water to prevent the body from freezing and thus reduces the risk of damaging the vehicle's paint when rinsing or wiping.
- The vehicle can be cleaned in automatic car washing equipment, but the structure, filter, cleaner and maintenance agent types of car washing equipment will affect the paint surface of the vehicle body. If the paint surface of the vehicle body is dull or even scratched after cleaning the vehicle, it should be pointed out to the operator of the car wash equipment immediately and the car wash equipment should be replaced if necessary.

7. MAINTENANCE

Service and maintenance for matte paint (if equipped)

- If the vehicle has not been cleaned for a long time and the stains are serious, please pre-clean it before driving into the car wash room.
- Use automatic car washing equipment, but do not use automatic car washing equipment with brushes. The recommended car washing method is to clean the vehicle manually with a soft sponge, neutral cleaner and plenty of clean water.
- Avoid resin or grease coming into contact with the paint film, otherwise it will leave marks. Tar stains can be removed with a tar remover.
- When cleaning the vehicle body, no matter what kind of cleaner is selected, and whether it is matched with a soft sponge or a soft cloth, it is forbidden to apply pressure or rub the paint surface. The correct way is to use a combination of gentle rinsing and gentle wiping.
- Please remove contaminants such as bird droppings, tree sap, metal particles or small bugs from the paint surface as soon as possible. It can be softened with water, or carefully rinsed with high pressure equipment. If the excrement is firmly stuck to the vehicle body, spray insect killer first and then clean it.

CAUTION

- Matte body is prohibited from cleaning with rollers with brushes or rough wiping rag.
- Do not use a cleaning cloth or sponge with stains or particles to wipe the vehicle body to avoid scratches on the paint film.
- Please do not clean the vehicle frequently for a long time, otherwise it will cause the paint surface to be abnormally glossy or become uneven. Avoid cleaning the vehicle in direct sunlight.
- Please do not use paint cleaners, abrasives or polishing products (such as gloss-retaining wax) to treat the paint film to avoid damaging the paint film.
- If the paint film is accidentally smeared with wax, please wipe it off immediately with a silicone remover. Be careful when operating and do not use too much force.
- When cleaning the vehicle body, if pressure or rubbing is applied illegally, the matte texture of the paint surface may be changed, thus causing uneven glossy of the vehicle body.

7-3. Regular Maintenance

Technical Data

Fluid Name	Specification	After-sale Maintenance
Refrigerant	R1234yf	550±15g
Compressor oil	PVE	180±10g

 READ

Contains fluorinated greenhouse gases and CO₂ equivalent 0.000275t.

 CAUTION

The above filling amount is only for reference. The specific fluid amount should be based on the actual vehicle measurement.

SPECIFICATION

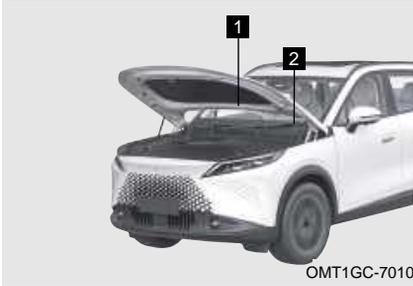
8-1. Label Location		Suspension System.....	274
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)	268	Power Battery.....	274
Vehicle Product Label	269	Battery.....	274
Engine Number.....	269	Brake System.....	275
Microwave Window	269	Wheel Alignment.....	275
8-2. Vehicle Specifications		Wheel and Tyre.....	276
Vehicle Dimensions	270	Seat Parameters	276
Vehicle Type.....	271	Light Bulb Specification.....	277
Vehicle Weight.....	271	Measurement Range of Vehicle Overall Size Excluding Following Components.....	277
Vehicle Performance	272	Your Rights	279
Engine Performance.....	272	Contact Us	279
Drive Motor	273		
Fuel System	273		

8. SPECIFICATION

8-1. Label Location

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

Vehicle identification number on actual vehicle



1 Vehicle identification number label is located at the lower part of the front compartment cover (as shown in the illustration).

2 Vehicle identification number label is located on upper left of front passenger side instrument panel (as shown in the illustration), and can be seen from the outside through the front windshield.



3 Vehicle identification number label is located at the lower part of the back door (as shown in the illustration).



4 Vehicle identification number is stamped under the driver seat (as shown in the illustration).

CAUTION

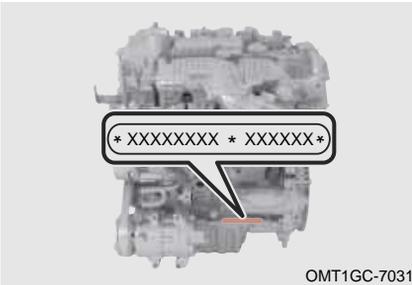
It is forbidden to cover, paint, weld, cut, drill or remove vehicle identification number and areas around it.

Vehicle Product Label



Vehicle product label is located on right quarter outer panel (as shown in the illustration).

Engine Number



Engine number is located on engine block (as shown in the illustration).

Microwave Window

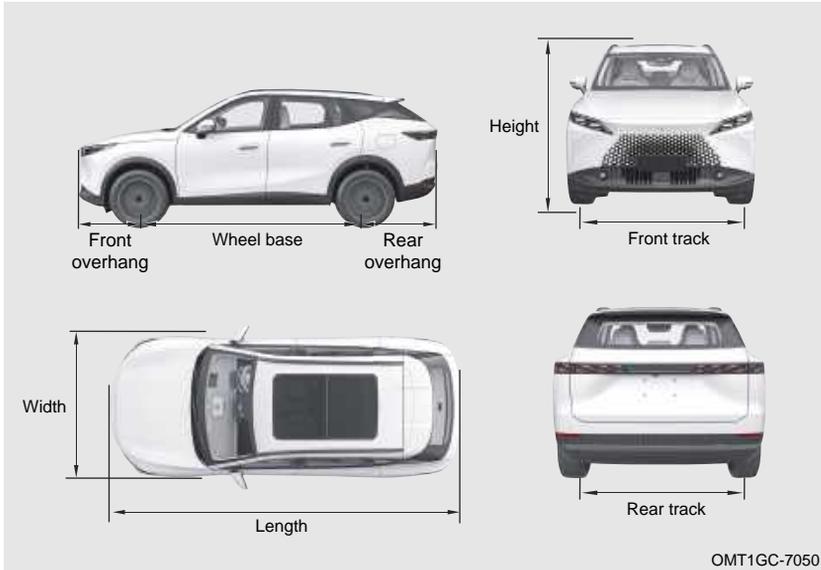


The microwave window is located on the inner side of the front windshield to the back of inside rear view mirror, where is for wireless RF signal transmission and installation of automotive electronic identification.

8. SPECIFICATION

8-2. Vehicle Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions



Overall Size	Length (mm)	4660
	Width (mm)	1875
	Height (mm)	1670
Wheel Base (mm)		2720
Track	Front (mm)	1582
	Rear (mm)	1604
Overhang	Front (mm)	912
	Rear (mm)	1028

Vehicle Type

Vehicle Type	4 × 2 front-wheel drive, front-wheel steering, transverse front-engine, two-compartment, five-door, five-seat, integral body, right-hand drive
Engine Model	SQRH4J15
Engine Type	Vertical, 4-cylinder in-line, water-cooled, 4-stroke, double overhead camshaft
Fuel Supply Type	Direct injection
Transmission Model	130HHB

Vehicle Weight

Vehicle Curb Weight (kg)		1870	1785
Vehicle Curb Axle Weight	Front Axle (kg)	1065	1022
	Rear Axle (kg)	805	763
Manufacturer Maximum Total Weight (kg)		2392	2322
Manufacturer Maximum Total Axle Weight	Front Axle (kg)	1161	1128
	Rear Axle (kg)	1231	1194
Seating Capacity (Including Driver) (Person)		5	5

WARNING

Please follow the vehicle load specified in the instruction manual and do not exceed the allowable total weight. Otherwise, the brake and handling performance of the vehicle may change and could cause a personal injury and accident.

8. SPECIFICATION

Vehicle Performance

Passing Performance	Minimum Ground Clearance (mm)		154
	Minimum Turning Diameter (m)	Left Turn (m)	11.04
		Right Turn (m)	11.04
	Approach Angle (°)		20.1
	Departure Angle (°)		21.3
	Maximum Vehicle Speed (HEV) (km/h)		180
	Maximum Vehicle Speed (EV) (km/h)		140
	Maximum Gradeability (%)		35

Engine Performance

Engine Model	SQRH4J15
Cylinder Bore Diameter (mm)	72
Piston Stroke (mm)	92
Displacement (ml)	1499
Compression Ratio	14.5:1
Maximum Net Power (kw)	105
Maximum Net Power Speed (rpm/min)	5200
Maximum Net Torque (N·m)	215
Maximum Torque Speed (rpm/min)	2500

Drive Motor

Model	KPTZ220YMDA0
Type	Permanent magnet synchronous motor
Cooling Method	Oil cooling
Rated Voltage (V)	350
Rated Power (kw)	70
Peak Power (kw)	150
Rated Torque (N·m)	140
Peak Torque (N·m)	310
Rated Speed (rpm)	4775
Peak Speed (rpm)	16000

Fuel System

Fuel Type*1	Unleaded gasoline with an octane 91# or higher
	Unleaded gasoline with an octane 92# or higher
	Unleaded gasoline with an octane 95# or higher
	E22-E100
Fuel Tank Type	Metal fuel tank
Fuel Tank Capacity	60 L
Fuel Pump	Electric fuel pump

*1: Please use the fuel recommended by authorized dealers.

 READ

Vehicle with catalytic converters can only use unleaded gasoline. In order to avoid the accident of filling wrong fuel type, the fuel filler pipe adopts a neck-type fuel filler port design, and only the standard unleaded gasoline fuel gun can be used for fueling operation.

8. SPECIFICATION

CAUTION

- Only use recommended fuel type.
- Gasoline numbers lower than requirements may cause damage to the engine and such damage is not covered under warranty.
- Using leaded gasoline will cause three-way catalytic converter to lose its effectiveness and exhaust system to function improperly.
- If you accidentally fill leaded gasoline to the oil tank and start the engine (- even if only a small amount is filled), it will cause permanent damage to the catalytic converter. If you accidentally fill leaded gasoline, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Suspension System

Front Suspension	Macpherson type
Rear Suspension	Multi-link type

Power Battery

Items	CATL Battery	EVE
Cell Capacity (ah)	52.5	28
System Capacity (ah)	52.5	28
Total Energy (kwh)	18.4	9.9
Cell Voltage (V)	3.13	3.17
Rated Voltage (V)	350.56	353.6
Drive Mode	2WD	
Cooling Method	Liquid cooling	

Battery

Battery Model	12V 40Ah
---------------	----------

Brake System

Foot Brake	Front Wheel	Disc brake
	Rear Wheel	Disc brake
Brake booster		Vacuum booster
Parking Brake		Electric parking brake for rear wheels
Reasonable Range of Brake Pedal Free Travel		0-25 mm
Reasonable Range of Use for Brake Friction Pair		Thickness of new front brake disc: 25 mm, use limit 23 mm Thickness of new front brake plate friction material: 10 mm, use limit: 2 mm Thickness of new rear brake disc: 12 mm, use limit: 10 mm Thickness of new rear brake plate friction material: 9.1 mm, use limit: 2.1 mm

WARNING

- In the case of heavy load, the brake fluid should be replaced at the same time as the replacement of brake pads.
- When adding brake fluid, make sure it is absolutely clean. If any dirt gets into the brake system, it may result in loss of braking performance.

Wheel Alignment

Front Wheel	Front Wheel Camber	$-25' \pm 45'$
	Kingpin Caster Angle	$4^{\circ}28' \pm 60'$
	Kingpin Inclination Angle	$13^{\circ}43' \pm 60'$
	Front Wheel Toe-in	$5' \pm 5'$ (one side)
Rear Wheel	Rear Wheel Camber	$-42' \pm 30'$
	Rear Wheel Toe-in	$5' \pm 10'$ (one side)

8. SPECIFICATION

Wheel and Tyre

Tyre Model		235/50 R19, 235/45 R20
Rim Model		19X7J; 20X8J
Cold Tyre Inflation Pressure (kPa) (Unladen)	Front Wheel	250
	Rear Wheel	250
Tightening Torque of Wheel Bolts (N·m)		M14:180 ± 18

READ

The tyre inflation pressures listed in the table above apply only to cold tires. The pressure increases slightly when the tyre is heated, but it is unnecessary to lower the pressure.

CAUTION

- Tyre pressure should be checked at least once a month and is particularly important if driving at high speeds.
- Cold tyre inflation pressure values are listed on a label of the driver's doorsill.

Seat Parameters

The Design Position of Seat	Front Seat	Adjustable 200 mm forward and 40 mm backward; adjustable 40 mm upward and 20 mm downward
	Second Row Seat	Unadjustable position
The Design Angle of Seatback	Front Seat	Adjustable 30° forward and 50° backward
	Second Row Seat	27°

Light Bulb Specification

Light Bulb Name	Nominal Light Source (Type/Model)	Replacement Advice
Headlight	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Rear Fog Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Front Position Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Rear Position Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Brake Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
High Mounted Brake Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Back-up Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Front Turn Signal Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Side Turn Signal Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Rear Turn Signal Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Daytime Running Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
License Plate Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station

Measurement Range of Vehicle Overall Size Excluding Following Components

Components not included in vehicle length measurement range

The following devices do not have laden function and do not exceed the front or rear end of the vehicle by more than 50 mm, and fillet radius of edge and corner is no less than 5 mm:

- Wiper and washer
- Outer identification, including registered trademark, manufacturer name, origin, model name and type, engine emission, transmission type, drive mode and other distinguishing identification of the vehicle
- Lights and light signal device

8. SPECIFICATION

- Anti-collision rubber block and equivalent
- External sunshade device
- Customs sealing device and its protective device
- Device used to fixed raincloth and its protective device
- Locking device, hinge, handle, controller, switch
- Step plate (or ladder), vehicle climbing step plate and handle on top of bumper used for cleaning windows.
- Rear emblem plate with LOGO
- Removable trailer or towing device
- Exhaust tail pipe

Components not included in vehicle width size:

- Indirect view device
- School bus stop plate in inoperative state

The following devices do not have laden function and their one side size exceeds the side of vehicle for no more than 50 mm, and fillet radius of edge and corner is no less than 5 mm:

- Outer identification, including registered trademark, manufacturer name, origin, model name and type, engine emission, transmission type, drive mode and other distinguishing identification of the vehicle
- Lights and light signal device
- Anti-collision rubber block and equivalent
- Customs sealing device and its protective device
- Device used to fixed raincloth and its protective device
- Local water drain slot: Refers to the water drain slot used to guide rain flow above driver door (or window) and passenger door, both sides of front windshield
- Flexible protruding part of splash proof system
- Retractable step plate, entering/exiting slope of bus, lifting platform and equivalent that is in the retract state
- Locking device, hinge, handle, controller, switch
- Tyre failure signal device
- Tyre pressure indicator
- Deformed part of tyre wall directly above contact point between tyre and ground
- Reversing assistance device
- Exhaust tail pipe

Components not included in vehicle height measurement range:

Soft part of antenna

Device without laden function:

- Intake duct
- Indirect view device
- Current collecting device of electric vehicle (including its fixing device)
- Vehicle rear air guide device that is removable or folding, and its deployed and retracted length is no more than 2,000 mm and 200 mm respectively.
- Tailboard, entering/exiting slope and equivalent with a horizontal length no more than 300 mm in retract state
- Tail ladder

Your Rights

Depending on local law, you may have the following rights regarding your personal data: the right to object or withdraw consent, the right to access, update, and correct inaccuracies of your personal data, the right to have your personal data restricted or deleted, the right to receive your personal data and request its transfer to another organization where technically feasible, and the right to be informed of and lodge a complaint with your local data protection authority.

Contact Us

To make a query, raise a concern, or exercise your data subject rights, please feel free to contact us at privacy@omodaeu.com. This applies if you are based within the European Economic Area and the UK.

We take your privacy seriously and aim to respond to you within one month or within the timeline specified by the relevant local privacy protection law, after confirming your identity.

If you believe that we have not adequately addressed your complaints or concerns, you have the right to lodge a complaint with a competent data protection authority.

A

A/C Setting	104
Active Speed Limit (ASL) (If Equipped)	165
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) System	160
After Starting Engine	15
Air Conditioning Heating	107
Air Conditioning Operation	104
Air Conditioning System	103
Air Outlets Airflow Control	111
Airbag	149
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ...	204
Audio Button	100
Audio System	93
Authorized Service Station is at Your Service	248
Auto Hold System (AUTO HOLD)	142
Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) System/Front Collision Warning (FCW) System (If Equipped)	180
Automatic Transmission	145
Avoiding Tire Flat Spot	260
Checking Battery	261
Checking Coolant Level	257
Checking Fuse	245
Checking Oil Level	255
Checking Radiator and Condenser	257
Checking Tires	258
Checking Transmission Fluid Level	256
Checking Windshield Washer Fluid	261
Checking Wiper Blades	262
Child Lock	84
Child Restraint System	61
Column Shift Switch	146
Connection	96
Contact Us	279
Control Center	94
Correct Sitting Posture	51
Cybersecurity Notice for Scrapping or Resale	23
Cybersecurity Support Service Update or Termination Notice	22

B

Back Door	126
Backup Power Supply (12 V)	125
Basic Knowledge of Vehicle Emergency	232
Battery	274
Battery is Depleted	239
Before Starting Engine	14
Blind Spot Detection Assist System (If Equipped)	171
Blind Spot Detection Assist System	171
Brake System	140, 275
Braking Force Control System ...	201

C

Caution	159
Charging Device	214
Checking Air Conditioning Filter .	261

D

Delivery Card	5
Delivery Inspection Certificate	11
Door Mechanical Switch	83
Door Opening Warning (DOW) System (If Equipped)	173
Door Unlocking/Locking	82
Doors	82
Drive Mode	147
Drive Motor	273
Driver assistance	95
Driver Monitoring System (DMS)	183
Driver Seat Memory Function (If Equipped)	54
Driving	95
Driving on Road Covered with Ice and Snow	21
Driving Recorder	112
Driving Recorder (If Equipped) ...	112
Driving Safety Assist System	178
Driving Through Water	19

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

E

Easy Seat Access/Exit Function (If Equipped).....	55
Effective Range	75
Electric Parking Brake System (EPB)	140
Electric Power Steering System (EPS).....	139
Electronic Stability Control System	201
Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) (If Equipped).....	170
Engine Coolant Temperature is Too High	237
Engine Number	269
Engine Performance	272
Exhaust System Inspection	17
Extended Function.....	205
Exterior Lighting	45

F

Follow Me Home Function.....	48
Foot Brake.....	144
Fragrance System (If Equipped).....	111
Fragrance System	111
Front A/C.....	103
Front Compartment Cover.....	126
Front Seat	52
Fuel System.....	273
Fuel Tank Cap.....	131
Fuse	244
Fuse Box.....	244

H

Hazard Light	232
Head Restraint	51
Headlight Leveling Adjusting	48
Heated Steering Wheel (If Equipped)	35
Hill Descent Control (HDC) System	203
How to Read This Manual	2
How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle	13

I

If You Have a Flat Tyre When Driving.....	234
Immobilizer System.....	80
Index	2
Inside Rear View Mirror	38
Inspection and Preparation Before Driving.....	136
Installing Child Restraint Systems	65
Installing Towing Eyelet	243
Instrument Cluster	26
Instrument Cluster Overview	26
Intelligent Cruise Control System	175
Intelligent Headlight Control (IHC) (If Equipped)	49
Intelligent Mode (If Equipped)....	110
Intelligent Speed Control System (SCF) (If Equipped).....	166
Interior Lighting	47

K

Key Information	73
Keyless Entry.....	77

L

Label Location.....	268
Lane Assist System.....	167
Lane Assist System (If Equipped)	167
Lane Departure Prevention (LDP) (If Equipped)	168
Lane Departure Warning (LDW) (If Equipped).....	167
Light Bulb Specification	277
Lighting	95
Lighting System.....	45

M

Manual Back Door	126
Measurement Range of Vehicle Overall Size	

Excluding Following Components.....	277
Microwave Window.....	269
Moon Roof Jam Protection Function	91
Moon Roof Remote Control Function	90

N

New Vehicle Break-in	12
New Vehicle Inspection.....	11
Normal Maintenance	250

O

Off-road Driving	18
Operation/Malfunction Indicator ...	27
Outside Rear View Mirror	39
Outside Rear View Mirror Memory Function (If Equipped) ..	41

P

Panoramic Moon Roof.....	89
Panoramic Moon Roof (If Equipped)	89
Panoramic View Monitor System (AVM)	184
Parking Assist System.....	184
Parking on Slope	15
Parking Operations	15
Parking Radar System.....	188
"Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Card	7
Phone-link	100
Pictorial Index	2
Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle System (PHEV)	206
Power Back Door (If Equipped)..	127
Power Battery	206, 274
Power Windows.....	85

R

Reading Vehicle Identification Code Information	249
---	-----

Rear Collision Warning (RCW) System (If Equipped)	174
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (-RCTA) System (If Equipped)....	174
Rear Cross Traffic Braking (-RCTB) System (If Equipped)....	174
Rear View Mirror.....	38
Rear View Mirror Automatic Adjustment When Reversing (If Equipped).....	41
Recommended Child Restraint Systems	63
Reflective Vest	233
Refrigeration/Warming Function of Armrest Box	110
Remote Control System.....	119
Repair and Maintenance.....	248
Repairing Tyre in Emergency.....	234
Replacing battery.....	239
Replacing fragrance	111
Replacing Fuse	245
Replacing Wiper Blade	44

S

Safety Check	14
Safety Check	249
Seat.....	51
Seat Belt	55
Seat Belt Pretensioner.....	60
Seat Heating Function	54
Seat Parameters	276
Seat Ventilation Function (If Equipped)	54
Second Row Seat	53
Secondary Collision Mitigation System (MCB) (If Equipped)	178
Setting	94, 115
Smart Key	73
Smart Vehicle Locating Function ..	49
Spare Tools	234
Speed Limit Assist System (SLA) (If Equipped).....	160
Speed Limit System	160
Starting and Turning off Engine in Emergency	137
Steering System	139
Steering Wheel.....	35 - 36
Steering Wheel Buttons	37

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

Storage Space	121
Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors	125
Suspension System	274
Symbols in the Manual	3

T

Table of Contents	2
Technical Data	265
Top Tether	64
Towing	241
Towing Hook	241
Traffic Jam Assist (TJA) System/Integrated Cruise Assist (ICA) System (If Equipped)	175
Transmission	145
Tyre Chains	21
Tire Rotation	261

U

USB Port	124
User Registration Certificate	4

V

Vacuum Booster (If Equipped) ...	143
Vehicle Arming	79
Vehicle Dimensions	270
Vehicle Emergency Handling	234
Vehicle Emergency Rescue	232

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)	268
Vehicle Performance	272
Vehicle Power Mode	136
Vehicle Power-on	136
Vehicle settings	96
Vehicle Specifications	270
Vehicle Type	271
Vehicle Weight	271
Voice Recognition Function	100

W

Warning Triangle	233
Wheel Alignment	275
Wheel and Tyre	276
When Driving	15
When Driving on Slippery Road Surfaces	19
Window Jam Protection Function (If Equipped)	87
Window Remote Control Function	87
Windows	85
Winter Driving Tips	20
Wiper Operation	42
Wiper System	42
Wireless Charging	115

Y

Your Rights	279
-------------------	-----

Emergency Response Guide

1-1. RESCUE INFORMATION

Rescue Card Information.....2
Vehicle Basic Information3
Safety Sign Information4
Disconnecting 12 V Battery....6
High Voltage Power
Release Method.....6
Disconnecting Charging
Gun.....6

1-2. EMERGENCY

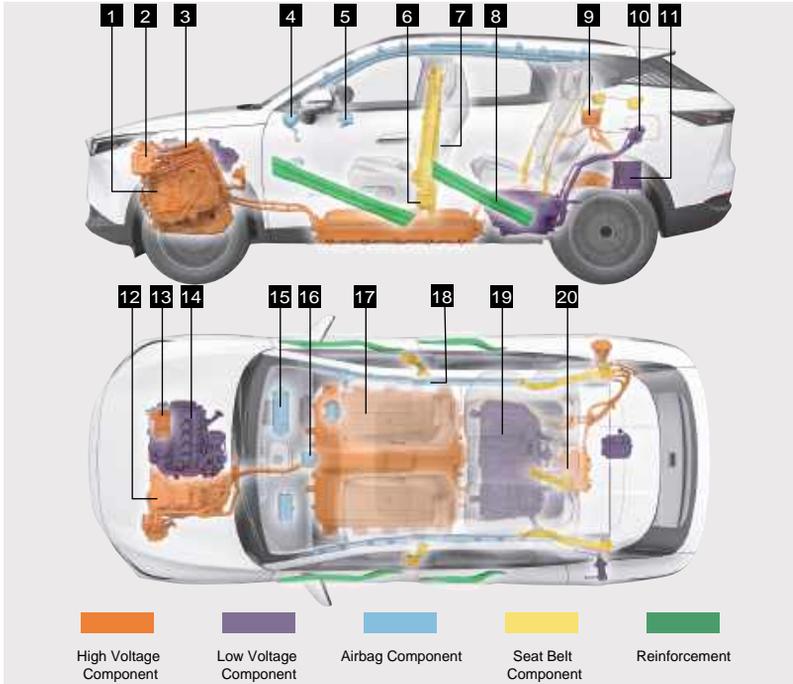
HANDLING PROCEDURE
INFORMATION

Parking Operations.....7
Vehicle Power-off7
Back Door Emergency
Opening.....8
Protection Device
Required for Rescuer.....8
Emergency Rescue9
Towing Vehicle..... 12

1. RESCUE INFORMATION

1-1. RESCUE INFORMATION

Rescue Card Information



- 1** Hybrid Transmission **2** High Voltage Heater **3** High Voltage Power Distribution Unit
- 4** Front Passenger Airbag **5** Driver Airbag **6** Seat Belt Pretensioner (If Equipped)
- 7** Side Airbag (If Equipped) **8** Anti-collision Panel **9** AC/DC Charging Port
- 10** Fuel Filler **11** Battery (12 V) **12** Front Motor Controller
- 13** Electric Compressor **14** Engine **15** Driver Knee Airbag (If Equipped)
- 16** Airbag Module **17** Power Battery **18** Side Curtain (If Equipped)
- 19** High Pressure Fuel Tank **20** On-board Charger Assembly

⚠ WARNING

- In case of traffic accident, do not touch high voltage component and high voltage wire harness in the illustration to avoid serious injury or even death.
- When cutting the vehicle for rescue, avoid the components in the illustration and the rescuer must wear basic rescue protective device. Select high voltage rescue protective device or fire rescue protective device according to the site situation. Failure to follow the instructions may cause personal injury or even death.

Vehicle Basic Information

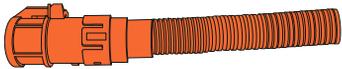
Overall Size	Length (mm)	4660
	Width (mm)	1875
	Height (mm)	1670
Wheel Base (mm)		2720
Manufacturer Maximum Total Weight (kg)		2392 / 2322
Seating Capacity (- Including Driver) (Person)		5

Battery cells	Type	Lithium ion battery	
	Monomer nominal voltage (V)	3.13	3.17
Power battery assembly	Battery pack rated capacity (Ah)	52.5	28
	Battery pack nominal voltage (V)	350.56	353.6
	Number of battery pack (pieces)	1	
Fuel tank capacity (L)	60 L		

1. RESCUE INFORMATION

Safety Sign Information

Warning Sign Name	Warning Sign Pattern	Warning Sign Description
High Voltage Warning Sign 1		Never touch high voltage system components. Never depress! Danger!
High Voltage Warning Sign 2		High voltage system components, be careful, Danger! Never touch high voltage system components without wearing protection device, beware of electric shock!
High Voltage Warning Sign 3		High voltage system components, be careful, Danger! Never touch high voltage system components without wearing protection device, beware of electric shock and high temperature scald!
High Voltage Warning Sign 4		High voltage system components, be careful, Danger! Never touch high voltage system components without wearing protection device, beware of electric shock and high temperature scald!
High Voltage Warning Sign 5		High voltage system components, be careful, Danger! Never touch high voltage system components without wearing protection device, beware of electric shock and high temperature scald!

<p>High Voltage Warning Sign 6</p>		<p>High voltage system components, be careful, Danger! Never touch high voltage system components without wearing protection device, beware of electric shock and high temperature scald!</p>
<p>High Voltage Wire Harness Sign</p>		<p>Vehicle high voltage system components are connected by orange high voltage wire harness. Never touch high voltage system components without wearing protection device!</p>
<p>Power Battery Pack Warning Sign</p>		<p>Usage precautions for power battery pack!</p>

<p>⚠ WARNING</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • After vehicle is started, power system will be hot. Be careful of high voltage and high temperature, and always follow the instructions on the vehicle safety warning signs. • Never touch, remove or replace parts with high voltage warning marks, orange cables and connectors on vehicle to prevent high voltage electric shock. • Not every high voltage component is labeled. Rescuer must wear basic rescue protective device when cutting a vehicle. Select high voltage rescue protective device or fire protective device according to the site situation. Failure to follow the instructions may cause personal injury or even death.
--

1. RESCUE INFORMATION

Disconnecting 12 V Battery



1. Power off the vehicle;
2. Open the back door, and remove the right protector;
3. Disconnect the negative battery cable.

High Voltage Power Release Method



1. Power off the vehicle;
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable;
3. Remove front compartment fuse box cover, refer to fuse location diagram on fuse box cover, pull BMS fuse out by a fuse remover and disconnect the BMS module power.

Disconnecting Charging Gun



If charging gun cannot be unplugged from AC charging port by pressing and holding the upper button of charging gun, it can be released manually by using the cable.

1. Make sure that the vehicle is not charged at present according to charging information displayed on instrument cluster;
2. Open the back door and lift the luggage compartment carpet;
3. Pull charging gun release cable to release charging gun manually.

1-2. EMERGENCY HANDLING PROCEDURE INFORMATION

Parking Operations



Depress brake pedal, and park the vehicle smoothly. Press P button to shift the gear position to P, "Ⓟ" red indicator on instrument cluster remains on, indicating that parking function is activated.

Vehicle Power-off

Normal power-off

With vehicle in READY and gear position in P, the driver door is opened, the driver gets up and leaves the driver seat, "READY" indicator on instrument cluster goes off, the vehicle exits "ready to drive" state.

With the vehicle power-on or in READY, if the driver seat is not occupied, all four doors are closed, and gear position is in P, the following operations will power off the vehicle:

- Lock and power off the vehicle with smart key.

Power-off switch

When the vehicle is in a stationary state for a long time, perform power-off through the power-off switch in the head unit display to reduce the loss of vehicle energy consumption.



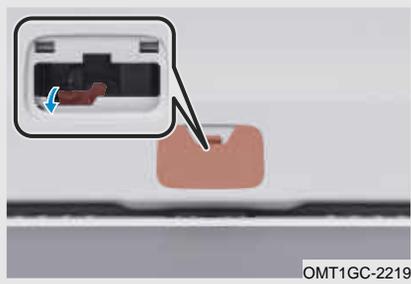
When the vehicle is in a stationary state and the shift position is in P/N, press the power-off switch and confirm to turn off power supply of the vehicle according to the hints on head unit, the vehicle is powered off.

Automatic power-off

With vehicle powered on, driver seat not occupied, four doors closed, and gear position in P, the vehicle is powered off automatically after parking for about 90 minutes.

1. RESCUE INFORMATION

Back Door Emergency Opening



Back door cannot be opened when battery is depleted or under similar conditions. In this case, the back door can be opened with back door stand-by device switch (stop the vehicle as safely as possible if condition permits).

Step 1: Fold the rear seatback;

Step 2: Get in the rear of vehicle and open stand-by device cover;

Step 3: Press down the stand-by device switch with hand, release it, and then push the back door to open it.

Protection Device Required for Rescuer



Basic Rescue Protection Device:

- 1** High Resistance Safety Work Shoes
- 2** Cotton Gloves
- 3** Protective Gloves

High Voltage Rescue Protection Device:

4 High Voltage Power Specialist Protective Clothing

5 Rubber Sheet

6 Safety Helmet with Goggles

Fire Rescue Protection Device:

7 Compressed Air Breathing Mask

8 Thermal Imaging Camera

WARNING

Rescuer must wear basic rescue protective device. Select high voltage rescue protective device or fire rescue protective device according to the site situation. Failure to follow the instructions may cause personal injury or even death.

Emergency Rescue

WARNING

When the vehicle needs emergency rescue, be sure to inform the rescuer that the vehicle is equipped with power battery, and please transfer the rescue information manual to rescuer.

How to avoid water intrusion into high voltage components

1. When a vehicle is flooded, first pull the vehicle out of the water and then cut off the high voltage power supply to avoid greater electric shock hazard due to vehicle immersion.
2. When washing the vehicle, avoid washing the charging port cover switch area with a high pressure water gun, otherwise it may cause the charging port cover to open and cause water to enter the charging port end.
3. Do not charge when there are obvious water stains in the charging port to avoid damage to the vehicle or charging device; When charging the vehicle, do not wash the charging port area to avoid damage to the vehicle or charging device.
4. Do not wipe the door protective panel with wet tissue, wet cloth, detergent etc. Pay attention to protection during the use of vehicle (such as on rainy days, washing vehicle) and try to avoid water intrusion into the door protective panel, otherwise it may cause internal electrical component fault etc.
5. Try to choose a place with a shelter for charging in the severe convective weather; If the vehicle is soaked in water or wading level is above the doorsill position, it may cause water to enter into the high pressure components. It is necessary to contact authorized service centre for proper test and treatment in time; Never drive on a road when water exceeds half of the tires.

1. RESCUE INFORMATION

6. Try not to drive on a road with unknown depth of water to avoid leakage accidents or damage to high voltage electrical components; If wading is necessary, analyze the road condition and confirm the depth of water before driving, and the water depth should not be higher than the bottom of the body; It is recommended not to stay in deep water for a long time during wading, otherwise vehicle high voltage components may be damaged.

Driving in wade

■ When vehicle drives in wade:

1. If you cannot drive the vehicle away from the waterlogged area, please cut off power supply immediately.
2. When driving in wade, do not stop the vehicle and keep driving at low speed (vehicle speed cannot exceed 6 mph (10 km/h)).
3. Drive the vehicle away from the waterlogged area and park it in a safe area. Check if there is any water in the vehicle, and clean it if there is.

■ After vehicle drives in wade:

1. If the vehicle is severely flooded, all persons in the vehicle must evacuate to a safe area immediately.
2. After the vehicle drives in wade, slightly depress the brake pedal several times to remove any residual water from the brake disc and ensure that the brake system can work properly.
3. Go to authorized service centre for routine inspection as soon as possible, as water may enter into components of the drive train system and dilute the grease, causing system malfunction when vehicle drives in wade.

Fire prevention

■ In order to prevent vehicle fires effectively, pay attention to the following precautions during usage:

1. Do not leave flammable and explosive materials in the vehicle.

In hot summer, the internal temperature of the vehicle parked in the sun can reach more than 70°C. If lighters, cleaner, perfume and other flammable and explosive materials are left in the vehicle, it is very easy to cause fire or even explosion.

2. After smoking, make sure that the cigarette butt is completely extinguished. Smoking is not only harmful to health, but also may cause fires. If the cigarette butt is not completely extinguished, it may cause a fire.
3. It is recommended to regularly go to authorized service centre for inspection.

Check the engine compartment for oil leakage regularly and clean any oil stain or oil on the engine in time.

Check regularly if vehicle circuits, electrical appliances and wire harness connectors, insulation and fixing position are normal. If any problem is found, handle it in time.

4. Do not modify vehicle circuits or add electrical components.

- a. It is strictly prohibited to use fuses or other metal wires that exceed the rated specifications of electrical appliances to replace fuses.
- b. Installation of other electrical appliances (such as high power audio and light) can cause excessive load on circuits, and wire harness is prone to heating, causing fires. Improper modification of electrical appliances and circuits can create contact resistance and abnormal heating, causing fires.

5. Precautions for driving.

When parking the vehicle, especially in summer, it is important to check underneath for flammable substances, such as hay, dead branches and leaves, or wheat straw. If there are flammable substances under the vehicle, it is very likely to cause fires. When driving, the vehicle should also avoid roads covered with flammable materials such as dry leaves, wheat straw and weed etc. as much as possible, or stop vehicle in time to check underneath for flammable materials after passing through such roads. When parking, try to avoid areas exposed to sunlight as much as possible.

6. Always leave portable fire extinguishers in the vehicle and master the usage methods.

To ensure vehicle safety, fire extinguishers should be equipped in the vehicle and regularly inspected and replaced; At the same time, it is important to be familiar with the usage of fire extinguishers and be prepared to avoid being helpless in case of accidents.

7. When repairing or maintaining a vehicle, it is necessary to disconnect the 12 V battery power after the vehicle high voltage power is cut off.

Fire treatment

■ If the vehicle is on fire, take effective measures promptly and calmly to minimize losses:

1. After the accident occurs, contact the insurance company for post-treatment in time.
2. After the fire department extinguishes the fire, ask for a police certificate and a statement of the fire cause.
3. Generally, a fire has early warning signs (such as abnormal noise or odor from body). Once abnormal conditions are found, stop the vehicle and power off in time, and carry out active rescue according to the actual situation.
4. If smoke is found in the front compartment, do not open the front compartment cover immediately (As doing so will intensify the combustion

1. RESCUE INFORMATION

and spread of the fire due to a large amount of air. Because the combustion material in the front compartment is limited, closing the front compartment cover can control the slow burning of the fire, which is conducive to extinguishing it).

- If fire occurs, leave the dangerous area immediately and call the fire telephone. Be sure to inform the rescuers that this is a hybrid vehicle, and deliver the onboard rescue information manual to the rescuers.

WARNING

When fire occurs, never touch any part of vehicle directly. Keep away from the vehicle and wait for professional rescuers wearing appropriate protective device to operate it.

Power battery leakage

If power battery leaks, leave the dangerous area immediately and call the fire telephone. Be sure to inform the rescuers that this is a hybrid vehicle, and deliver the onboard rescue information manual to the rescuers.

WARNING

High voltage battery liquid leakage caused by collision can only be operated by professional rescuers who wear protective mask and solvent-isolation gloves. Do not touch liquid directly.

Vehicle cutting area

Vehicle pillar uses cast aluminum alloy to protect personal safety. If it is necessary to cut during rescue, proper tools should be used. It is forbidden to cut the high temperature and high voltage areas of the vehicle.

WARNING

When cutting the vehicle, professional rescuers must use appropriate tools such as hydraulic cutter etc. and wear appropriate personal protective device to avoid serious personal injuries.

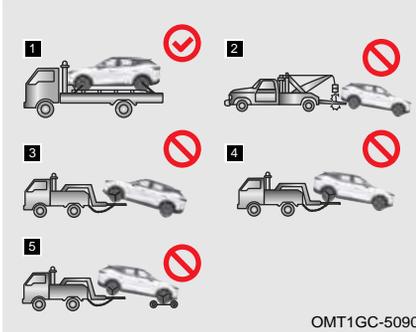
Towing Vehicle

If the vehicle needs to be towed, it is recommended to contact authorized service centre or professional towing services department, or ask for help from the roadside rescue service organization you have joined.

WARNING

- Damage caused by transportation is not covered by the warranty.
- To transport the vehicle, follow the instructions below strictly.
- Do not tow your vehicle only with ropes or chains by other vehicles.

Using platform trailer



Please use **1** platform rescue vehicle to load your vehicle.

Vehicle towing precautions are as follow:

- Tow with four wheels off ground. Do not use the rescue method **2 3 4 5** shown in the figure.
- Before towing, shift the gear position to N, turn on hazard light, and close the doors.
- During towing, nobody is allowed to seat in the accident vehicle.

 CAUTION

Do not move the vehicle with forklift when vehicle is broken down.

 WARNING

- No person or object is allowed behind the trailer when the vehicle is pulled onto the platform rescue vehicle, otherwise it may cause personal injury or death.
- The vehicle can only be towed away from the site if there is no safety risk. If the vehicle power battery pack has deformation, leakage, smoke, etc., the safety risk should be solved first.